



# Bodleian Libraries

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

This book is part of the collection held by the Bodleian Libraries and scanned by Google, Inc. for the Google Books Library Project.

For more information see:

<http://www.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/dbooks>

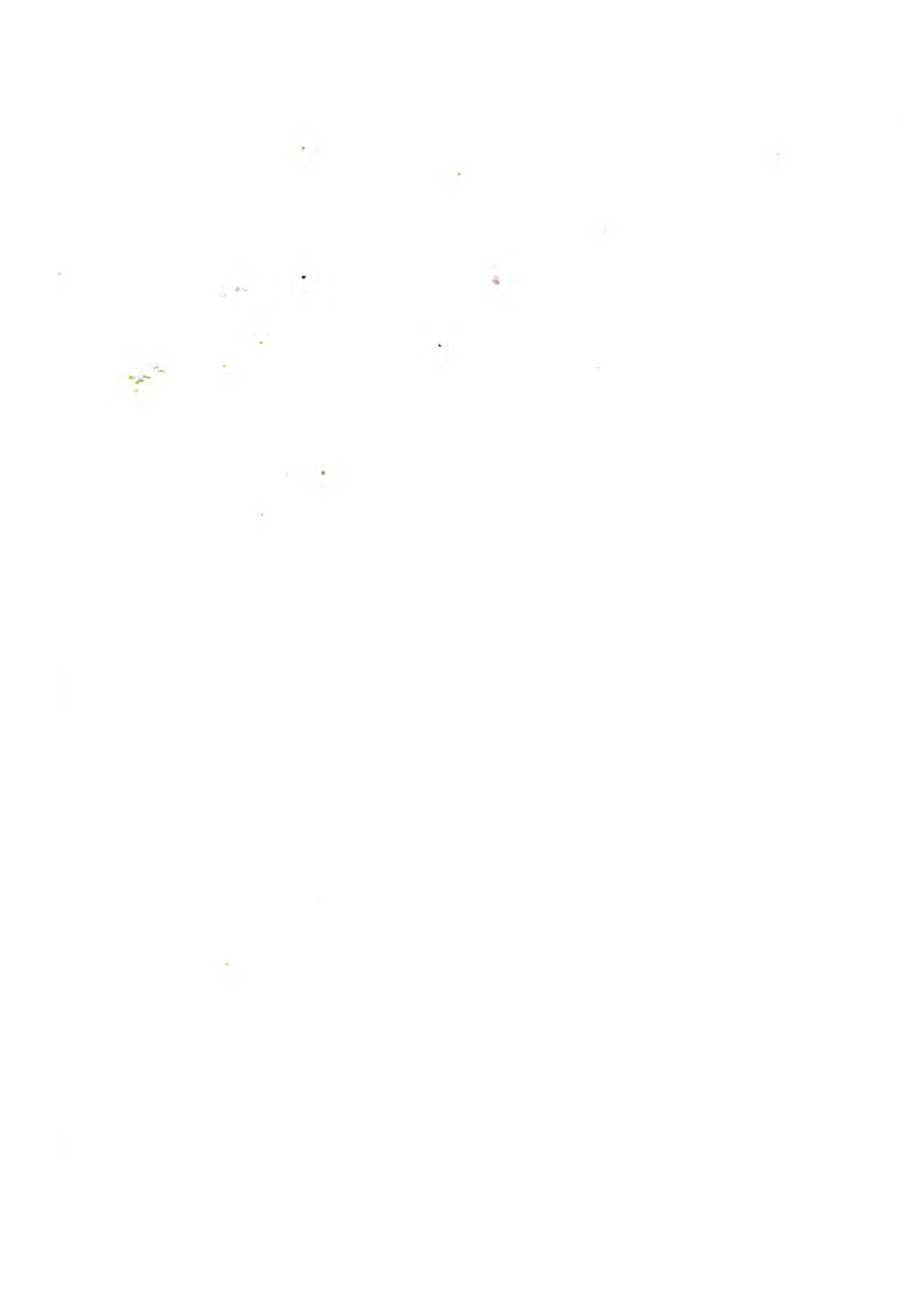


This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 UK: England & Wales (CC BY-NC-SA 2.0) licence.













PETER PARLEY'S

TALES

ABOUT

EUROPE, ASIA, AFRICA, AMERICA,  
AND OCEANIA.



# TALES

ABOUT

EUROPE, ASIA, AFRICA, AMERICA, & OCEANIA.

By PETER PARLEY,

AUTHOR OF "TALES ABOUT NATURAL HISTORY," ETC.



THE SEVENTH EDITION, GREATLY ENLARGED, WITH MAPS ENGRAVED  
ON STEEL, AND NUMEROUS ILLUSTRATIONS.



LONDON :

WILLIAM TEGG & CO., 85, QUEEN STREET,  
CHEAPSIDE.

—  
MDCCLIV.

2017.

f

193



Entered at Stationers' Hall.

LONDON :  
PETTER AND GALPIN, PRINTERS, PLAYHOUSE YARD,  
ADJOINING THE "TIMES" OFFICE.

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE design of this little work is to convey to young persons, under the guise of amusement, a simple idea of Geography and History. In pursuing this object, the author has enlivened his graver topics with personal adventures, and drawn an easy outline, adapted to the taste and knowledge of children.

There is more difficulty and more importance than is generally supposed in this humble species of literature. The *difficulty* of it arises from the want of a language, at the same time copious enough to express a great variety of ideas, and simple enough for the limited comprehension of children; the *importance* of it lies in the powerful aid which it is capable of giving to the cause of infant education.

The author has divided the work into chapters, or

lessons, and has subjoined questions: thus adapting the book to the use of schools, and rendering it at the same time more easy for parents to assist their children, in forming fit conceptions of Geography and History. As the first outset of any study is the most repulsive and difficult to children, an attempt is here made to beguile them by degrees into a knowledge of these subjects. A few ideas being given, and curiosity being once excited, the purpose of this work is answered, and the pupil is qualified to enter upon more regular and extensive systems of Geography and History.





## THE PUBLISHER'S ADDRESS TO THE YOUNG READER.

---

YOU are now going to read this little book, which contains Peter Parley's Stories about himself, and about Europe, Asia, Africa, America and Oceania. But before you proceed, I will give you some account of Mr. Parley and the country in which he lives.

If you were to enter a ship and sail to the westward across the Atlantic Ocean, you would come at length to a vast continent called America. This continent is three thousand miles from England, and a steamer is generally about eleven days going there.

There are now many millions of white people in America but in former times the whole country was inhabited by people with red skins, called Indians. These lived in a wild state, and spent much of their time in hunting wild animals. You will find in this little book many pleasant stories about these strange people.

Should you go to America, you would now find many

handsome towns and cities resembling those of England. New York is as large as Liverpool, and is a very handsome place. Boston is a charming city, nearly surrounded by water. It is a beautiful town, with a large population.

It is in Boston that Peter Parley lives, and to the little boys and girls of Boston he tells his Stories. It is understood that he dwells in a little brown house in the northern part of the city, and when the children go to see him he tells them tales of the many curious things he has seen.

In this book you will read the account Mr. Parley gives of himself. He has been a great traveller, has not only seen the people of America, but he has also been in Europe, and has there met with remarkable adventures. He has also been in Africa and Asia, and has seen many of the islands in the Pacific Ocean.

I am particularly anxious that the little boys and girls of Great Britain should read all these Tales, for they contain much useful knowledge. It is true Mr. Parley talks a great deal of himself, but his adventures are interesting, and these may afford amusement if they fail to give instruction.

# CONTENTS.

---

## TALES ABOUT EUROPE.

CHAP.	PAGE
1. Parley tells about Europe, and other Matters . . . . .	1
2. Parley describes the People of Europe . . . . .	7
3. Parley goes on a Voyage . . . . .	14
4. Parley tells about London . . . . .	18
5. Parley goes to see the King's Castle at Windsor . . . . .	25
6. Parley tells about the Kings of England . . . . .	27
7. Parley tells about England . . . . .	32
8. Parley goes to Holland . . . . .	34
9. Parley tells about Holland . . . . .	36
10. Parley tells about Peter the Great . . . . .	39
11. Parley goes to Copenhagen . . . . .	41
12. Parley leaves Copenhagen and tells about Sweden . . . . .	43
13. Parley tells about Norway . . . . .	47
14. Parley tells about Lapland . . . . .	50
15. Parley tells about St. Petersburg . . . . .	53
16. Story of Prascovia . . . . .	57
17. Parley leaves Petersburg and travels in Prussia . . . . .	61
18. Parley goes to Vienna . . . . .	67
19. Parley tells about Vienna . . . . .	71
20. Parley tells about Austria . . . . .	74
21. Parley tells about Turkey . . . . .	77
22. Parley goes to Italy . . . . .	85
23. Parley leaves Italy and visits Switzerland . . . . .	89
24. Parley tells about France . . . . .	94
25. Parley tells about Spain and Portugal . . . . .	102



## TALES ABOUT ASIA.

CHAP.	PAGE
1. Story of a Tiger and Crocodile . . . . .	109
2. Parleys tells about the Countries and People of Asia . . . . .	114
3. Parley tells how to go to China, and how he went there . . . . .	123
4. Description of Canton . . . . .	129
5. Something about China, the Emperor, Peking, and Nanking . . . . .	134
6. Parley tells about the People of China . . . . .	141
7. Parley tells about Tartary and the Tartars . . . . .	149
8. Parley gives an account of Thibet . . . . .	153
9. Some Account of Japan. A short method of saying Prayers . . . . .	157
10. Parley meets with an adventure. Tales about Tea. . . . .	162
11. Description of Malacca and the Malays . . . . .	167
12. Account of Indo China, and the Birman Empire. Grand Pro- cession. Mr. and Mrs. Judson . . . . .	170
13. Story of Mr. and Mrs. Judson . . . . .	173
14. Parley tells about Hindoostan, the Hindoos, and a Hurricane . . . . .	180
15. About Elephants, Tigers, Rhinoceroses, and Serpents . . . . .	183
16. Religion of the Hindoos . . . . .	187
17. Parley returns to America. A Waterspout. James Jenkins . . . . .	191
18. Adventures of James Jenkins . . . . .	194
19. Some Account of Arabia. Jenkins's Adventures continued . . . . .	200
20. Jenkins's Adventures continued . . . . .	208
21. Conclusion of Jenkins's Adventures . . . . .	214

## TALES ABOUT AFRICA.

1. Parley goes to the Mediterranean, and sees an Eruption of Mount Etna . . . . .	219
2. Parley sets out to return to America, but is overtaken by a Storm, and seized by Pirates . . . . .	227
3. Parley is carried to Tripoli, where he is imprisoned, and meets with strange Adventures . . . . .	231
4. A short Description of Africa . . . . .	237
5. Description of the City of Tripoli . . . . .	243
6. Account of Algiers, Morocco, and Tunis . . . . .	247
7. Parley finds out his Deliverer, and recognises an old Acquaint- ance . . . . .	253
8. The Story of a Robber . . . . .	256
9. Leo's Description of Egypt . . . . .	260

CHAP.	PAGE
10. Leo finishes his Story . . . . .	268
11. Parley tells how Decatur and Twenty Americans burnt the Philadelphia . . . . .	270
12. Parley arrives in Egypt, and goes with General Eaton's Expedition across the Desert . . . . .	275
13. Arrival at Derne. The Sirocco. A battle, and some other things	281
14. Parley sets out for China. Something about Captain Riley . . . . .	284
15. Parley continues his Voyage, and tells about Mungo Park, and other Travellers into Central Africa . . . . .	286
16. Something about Sierra Leone, Liberia, the Ivory Coast, Gold Coast, Guinea, and the Slave Trade . . . . .	293
17. Parley tells of his Voyage, and how they met with a dreadful Gale of Wind off the Cape of Good Hope . . . . .	299
18. Parley tells about Cape Colony, the Hottentots, and various wild Animals. Conclusion . . . . .	301

### TALES ABOUT AMERICA.

1. Parley tells about himself, about Boston, and about the Indians	311
2. Parley tells his Adventures . . . . .	315
3. Parley tells how he went out with a shooting Party . . . . .	317
4. Parley tells how Wampum talked of his Forefathers . . . . .	320
5. Parley tells how he went to Vermont . . . . .	322
6. Parley continues to tell his Adventures in Vermont . . . . .	325
7. Parley tells of his Return with the Soldiers, and other Matters	327
8. Parley tells about Hartford, the Charter, and Connecticut River	329
9. Parley tells of New York . . . . .	331
10. Parley tells the Adventures of James Jenkins . . . . .	336
11. Adventures of Jenkins continued . . . . .	340
12. Parley suffers Shipwreck . . . . .	345
13. Parley tells about Columbus . . . . .	348
14. Story of Columbus continued . . . . .	351
15. Stories of Cortez and Pizarro . . . . .	354
16. Parley tells about the Settlement of North America . . . . .	359
17. Parley continues to tell of the Settlements of North America . . . . .	362
18. Parley talks about the Settlement of North America, and the old French War . . . . .	365
19. Parley tells of the old French War . . . . .	369
20. Parley tells about the Revolution . . . . .	374

CHAP.	PAGE
21. The Story of the Revolutionary War . . . . .	378
22. Parley continues to tell of the American Revolution . . . . .	382
23. Parley tells of his strange adventures among the Indians . . . . .	385
24. Parley's Adventures continued . . . . .	389
25. Parley's Adventures continued . . . . .	393
26. Parley tells more about the Revolutionary War . . . . .	397
27. Parley concludes his remarks on America . . . . .	402

### TALES ABOUT OCEANIA.

1. Parley tells of Oceania . . . . .	411
2. Parley speaks of Sydney and other places . . . . .	413
3. Parley tells of the Gold Discoveries of Australia . . . . .	416
4. Parley tells of Van Diemen's Land . . . . .	420
5. Parley briefly speaks of Polynesia, and concludes . . . . .	422

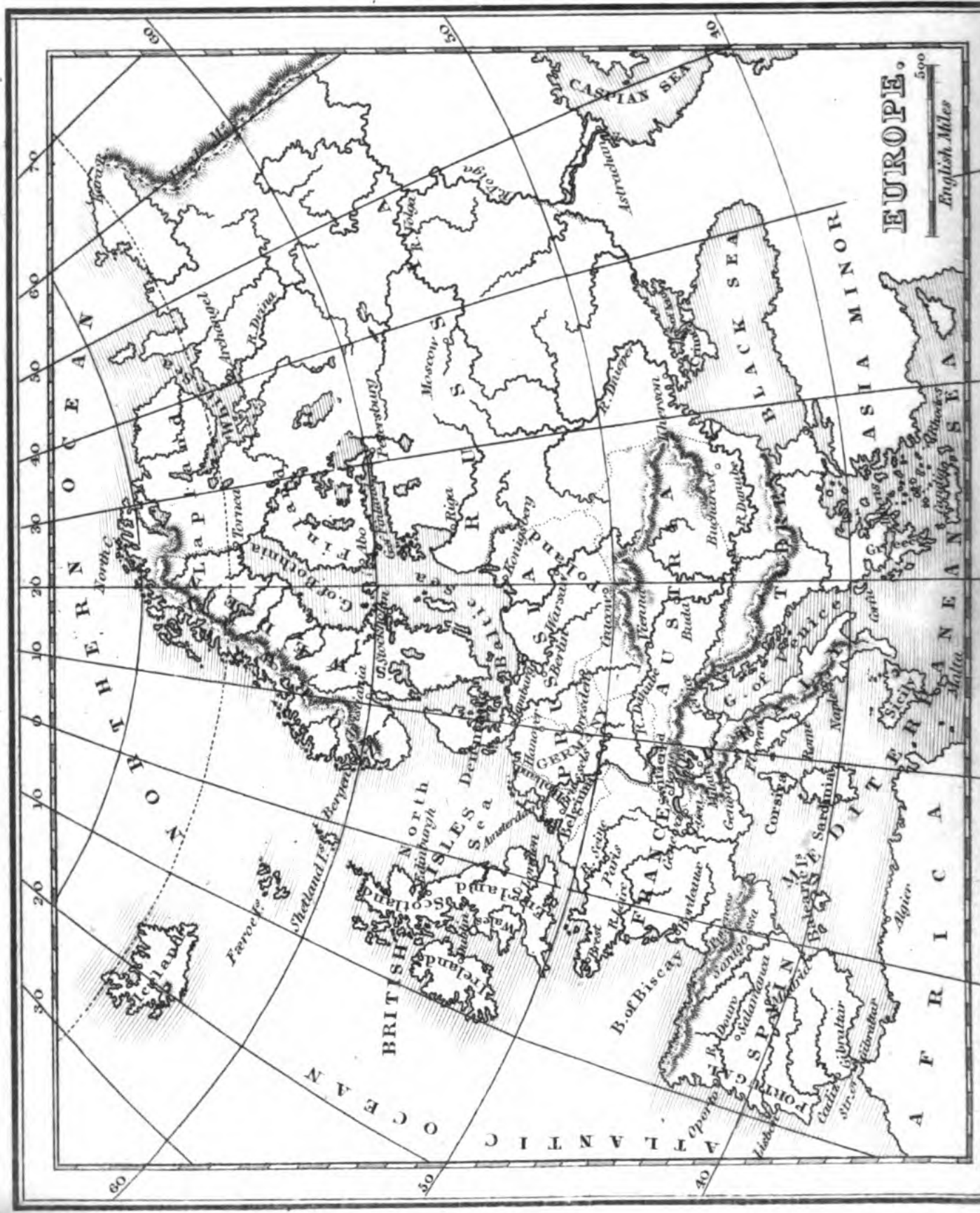
---

### POPULATION OF THE WORLD.

*(From Brookes's Gazetteer.)*

Europe . . . . .	259,953,156
Asia (Continental) . . . . .	529,946,123
„ (Asiatic Archipelago) . . . . .	58,533,676
Africa . . . . .	86,432,469
North America and Islands . . . . .	38,020,602
South America . . . . .	11,332,963
Australia and Oceania . . . . .	1,484,191
Total . . . . .	<u>985,703,180</u>





EUROPE.

500  
English Miles



PETER PARLEY'S  
TALES ABOUT EUROPE.



CHAPTER I.

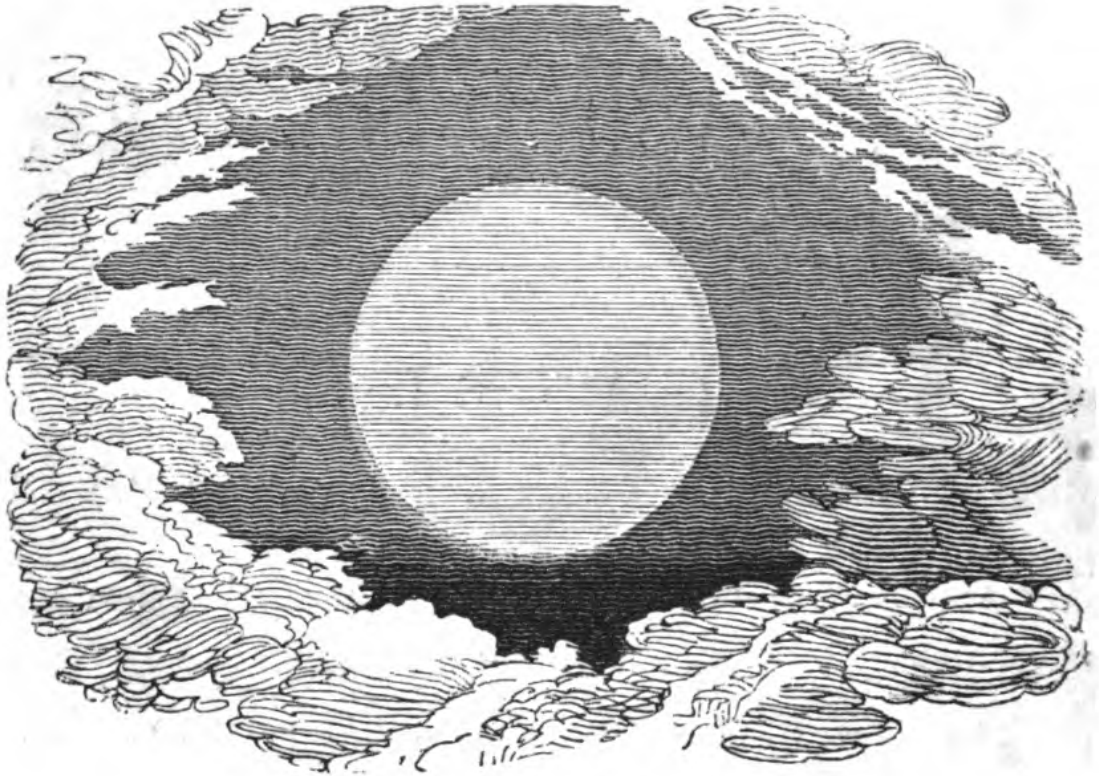
PARLEY TELLS ABOUT EUROPE, AND OTHER MATTERS.

**H**ERE I am! my name is Peter Parley! I am an old man, gray and lame. I have seen a great many things, and had a great many adventures, and I love to talk about them.

I love to tell stories to children, and very often they come to my house; they get around me, and I tell them stories of what I have seen and what I have heard. Listen, and I will tell some of them to you.

I suppose you have heard about Europe. Here I have a map of it, look it over, from the Northern ocean to the Mediterranean sea, and from England to Russia. And see, I have got, too, a representation of the world, which is round, and hangs like a ball in the air.

It looks, here, as it would do if you were to see it from a great distance. I suppose, if you could get upon the moon, the world would look to you like this.

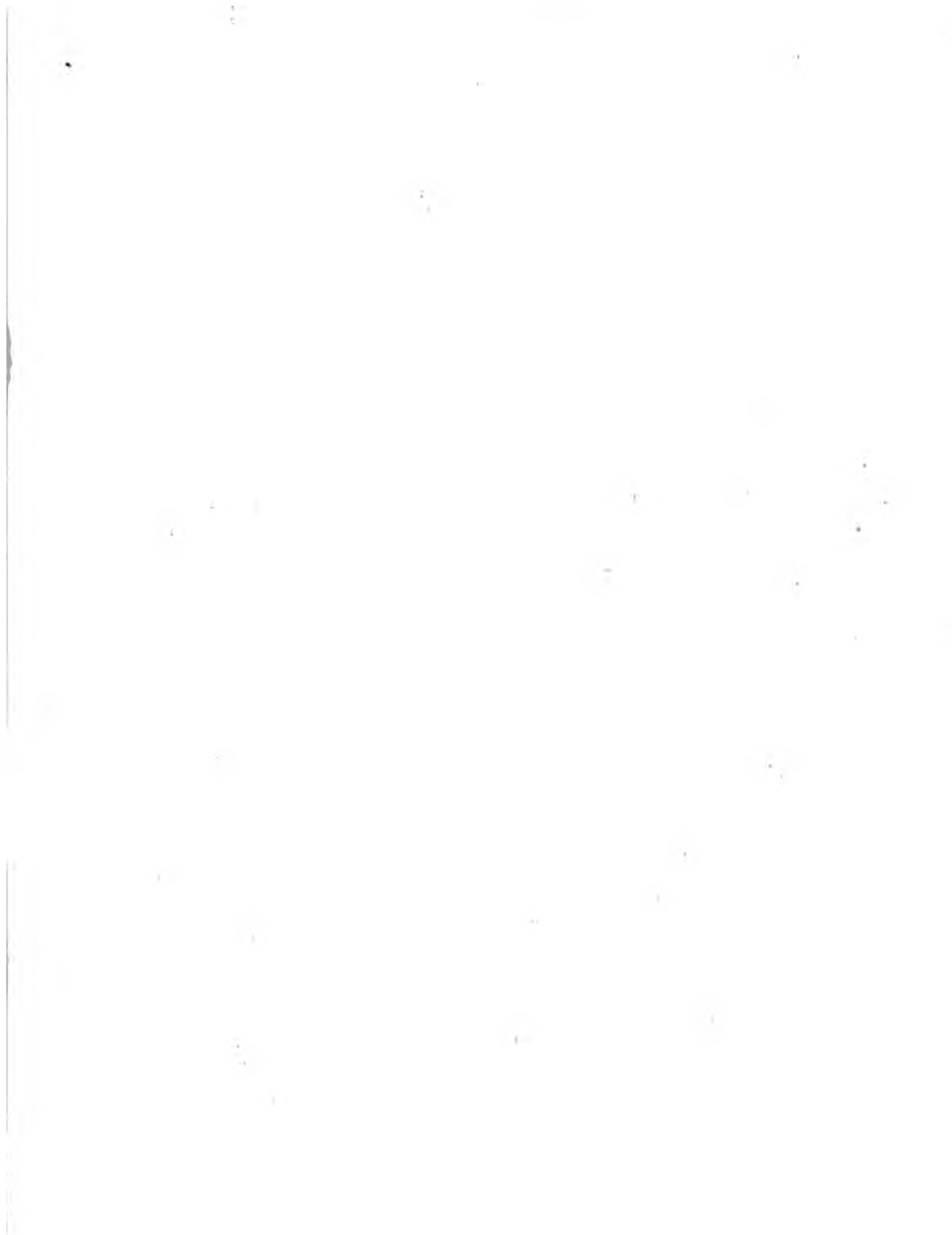


THE WORLD, AS VIEWED FROM THE MOON.

If you were to approach the world from the moon, and take a nearer view of it, you would see that a great part of its surface is water, with immense portions of land.

On one side, you would see the great western continent of North and South America; and on the other, you would see the great eastern continent which includes Europe, Asia, and Africa.

Here is a picture of one side of the world. The light





# EASTERN HEMISPHERE.



# WESTERN HEMISPHERE.





part on the globe represents land ; and is called America. The dark portion represents water.

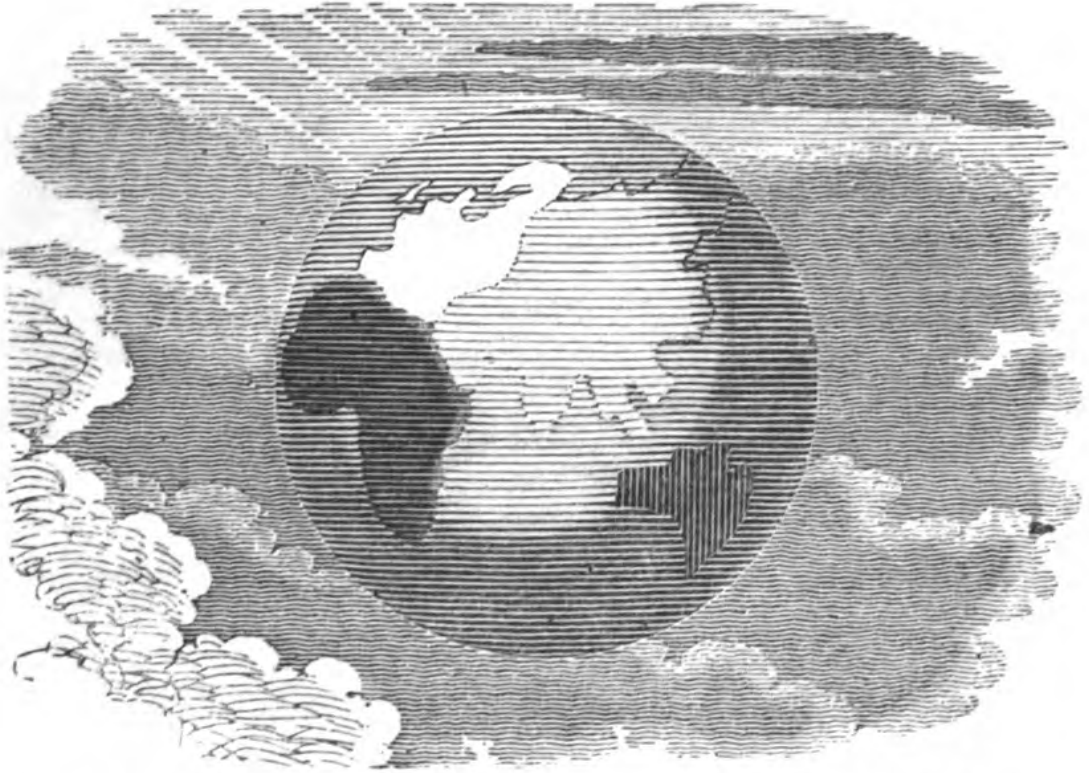


THE WORLD, SHOWING THE WESTERN CONTINENT OF NORTH AND SOUTH AMERICA.

Here is a picture of the other side of the world : the black part represents Africa. I have made it black, because the people are black, and, also, very ignorant.

The white part represents Europe, and it is made white, because the people are white, and because, also, they are very enlightened. The place which has lines drawn across in the picture, represents Asia ; and that which has lines drawn up and down, is New Holland.

You must recollect that the top of the map is North, the right hand East, the bottom South, and the left hand West. The same rule applies to all maps.



THE WORLD, SHOWING THE EASTERN CONTINENT OF EUROPE, ASIA,  
AND AFRICA.

These places which I have thus shown you, are land, and all the rest of the surface of the world is water, except islands, which are found in various parts of the ocean.

But I must tell you now about Europe.

Europe is a vast region, and the most populous part of the world. Though only one third of the size of Africa, it contains nearly four times as many inhabitants, and six times as many as all America. It is full of large cities and



towns, containing splendid palaces, churches, and other buildings ; some of them very ancient and curious ; and it is divided into a number of kingdoms and countries, very different from each other. The people of the different



EUROPE.

AFRICA.

ASIA.

AMERICA.

countries not only dress unlike each other, but speak different languages.

The English language, which is also spoken in America, is the language spoken in England, which forms part of the island of Great Britain. The northern part is called Scotland, and is the country of the Scotch. They, too, speak English ; and so do most of the Irish people, who live in an island called Ireland, governed by the reigning monarch of England.

---

Where is Europe ? Is it a great or small place ?  
What interesting things are there in Europe ?

Besides the English, the principal people of Europe are :

The French, whose country is called France.

The Dutch, who live in Holland.

The Germans, whose country is divided into a great many kingdoms. Some of the people are called Austrians ; some Prussians ; some Saxons ; some Swiss ;—because they live in Austrian Germany, Prussian Germany, Saxony, Switzerland, &c.

Besides these, there are the Danes, Swedes, and Norwegians, or people of Denmark, Sweden, and Norway, who speak nearly the same language.

The Russians, or people of Russia.

The Poles and other people speaking the Slavonian language.

The Hungarians, or people of Hungary.

The Turks, whose country is called Turkey.

The Greeks, who inhabit Greece.

The Italians, or people of Italy.

The Spaniards and Portuguese, who inhabit Spain and Portugal.

And there are some other nations, of which you shall hear, by and by.

---

What are the names of the principal nations in Europe?



CHAPTER II.

PARLEY DESCRIBES THE PEOPLE OF EUROPE.



SWEDES DANCING ROUND THE MAY-POLE.

THE northern countries of Europe are very cold. In Norway, Sweden, Denmark, and the northern part of Russia, the climate is very severe in winter ; and the people dress themselves in furs and skins.

The Swedes are poor, but frugal and honest. If you were to see them dancing, you would think that they were a happy people.

Russia is so large a country, that at one end it is extremely cold, like Canada, and at the other end the summers are intensely hot. The Russians are an ignorant people, very poor and stupid, and little better than slaves, except the great people, or nobles ; but they are said to be good soldiers.



RUSSIAN MILITARY OFFICERS.

The country called Prussia joins Russia. But the Prussians are a very different people, and speak German, or French. They are a very military people.



PRUSSIAN SOLDIERS.

The finest part of Germany, and all Hungary, belong to the emperor of Austria. The Austrians are, for the most part, very industrious and happy.



AUSTRIAN PEASANTS.

A very long chain of exceedingly high mountains, called the Alps, divides Germany and the rest of northern Europe

from the southern countries. Among the high mountains live the Swiss, whose country is called Switzerland. They are very hardy, and remarkably fond of their country.



SWISS WOMAN AND CHAMOIS HUNTER.

The country called Holland and the Netherlands, is the very opposite of Switzerland: for it is so flat that not a hill is to be seen; and the part which borders on the coast is lower than the sea, which is kept out by banks called dikes. The inhabitants, who are called Dutch, are very fond of smoking. The women smoke as well as the men. Look at them; for I have pictures of many of the things which I describe.

Italy is a beautiful country, with a delightful climate. The inhabitants were formerly called Romans, from the



DUTCH PEOPLE SMOKING.

great city of Rome. They are now called Italians. They are very superstitious and violent in their passions, but of lively imaginations, fond of music, painting, and poetry.

The Spaniards and Portuguese are nearly the same



AN ITALIAN PLAYING ON A GUITAR, BY MOONLIGHT.



people, though their customs and language somewhat differ, and they dislike each other. Their dress is very peculiar.



SPANIARDS DRESSED IN THEIR SHORT CLOAKS.

Spaniards almost always wear short cloaks when they are out of doors ; these cloaks are very graceful.

All these nations are Christian ; that is to say, they profess to believe in the Bible, although the religion of many of them is so corrupted, as to be very little like the Christian religion taught in the New Testament. But the people of Turkey, called Turks, or Ottomans, are not Christians, but followers of the false prophet Mahomet. Hence they are called Mahometans. Their dress and manners are quite unlike the other nations of Europe, and more nearly resemble those of the people of Asia. They are very bigoted, and hate all Christians.

The Greeks, who live to the south of Turkey, were once



TURKS SMOKING THEIR LONG PIPES.

a famous nation. They are now reduced to a small number ; but, in spite of all the cruelties with which they have been treated by the Turks, who conquered them ages ago, they still adhere to the Christian religion, and are very proud of their ancestors. I shall tell you more about these nations presently.



MODERN GREEKS.



## CHAPTER III.

## PARLEY GOES ON A VOYAGE.

SEVERAL years ago I became a sailor, and went to Europe. I sailed in the ship *Bold Hero*, from Boston for England. The vessel was commanded by Capt. Philips. We sailed over the water in an easterly direction for several days. The water we sailed over is called the Atlantic Ocean. At length there came a storm, and I assure you it is not very pleasant to be out at sea in a storm.

The water is thrown into great agitation, the waves rise and roll, and the ship is tossed about with the greatest violence. All becomes confusion and uproar. The captain calls aloud to the sailors; the wind whistles through the rigging of the ship; the sails flap about; the timbers creak; and the ocean roars!

So it was with us; I was at first alarmed by the appearance of some large masses of ice called *icebergs*. There was danger that our ship would be driven upon them, and thus be dashed in pieces.

While in this situation, night came on, and we expected never to see another morning. But morning came, and

we were safe. The storm had ceased, and we had left the icebergs at a distance.

But what was our surprise to discover, not far from us, the wreck of a vessel! We sailed toward it, and soon discovered that there was one man on the wreck.

The man called to us, and lifted up his arms, and begged for assistance. But the waves were still rolling heavily, and the wreck was nearly covered with water. We pitied the poor man, however, and did all we could to save him; at length we got him on board our ship.

He was an Italian, and his name was Leo. I had been very active in trying to rescue him, and he said he owed his life to me. He was a very singular man. Before I get through my stories, I shall often have occasion to mention him.

He was captain of the vessel which had been wrecked in the storm. All the persons on board were drowned except himself.

We now sailed on our course, but the wind soon died away. A calmness came over the sea, and our vessel sat motionless on the water. The sun shone out bright and clear; the waves, which before had tossed so fearfully, were now at rest; and the blue bosom of the ocean lay spread out to a vast distance, as smooth as the face of a mirror.

A thousand porpoises were playing on its surface, and many whales were spouting in the distance. Oh! thought I, how sweet and peaceful is the ocean at rest, but how dreadful in a storm!

At length a favourable wind arose, and bore us forward on our voyage. In thirty days after we left Boston, having sailed about three thousand miles, we drew near the coast of England. If you will look on the map of Europe, you will see a narrow strip of water between France and England, called the English Channel.

We sailed through this channel and entered the mouth of the Thames, the largest river in England. As we sailed up the Thames, we were astonished to see the multitude of vessels that were going up and down this river.

At length we reached London, the largest city in England, and one of the largest in the world. At the place where our vessel stopped, there were so many other ships, that their masts looked like a great forest.

---

What takes place at sea in a storm?

How many days did it take Parley to go to England in a ship?

How many miles is it to England? What narrow strip separates England from France? What is the largest river in England?

Do many vessels go up and down the Thames?

As I looked at these ships, I thought to myself how useful they are ! They supply England with the produce of other lands ; they bear her manufactures to all parts of the earth, and they carry out Bibles and missionaries, to make the world wiser and better. Old England is a fine country, say what you will.



THE LORD MAYOR'S SHOW ON THE THAMES.

---

What is the largest city in England, and one of the largest in the world? What do the masts of the vessels at London look like?

## CHAPTER IV.

## PARLEY TELLS ABOUT LONDON.



VIEW OF LONDON FROM THE OPPOSITE BANK OF THE RIVER THAMES

THERE are more houses and more people in London, than in Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, and

---

What are the five largest cities in the United States that have not so many houses and people as London?



Charlestown, five of the largest cities in the United States of America, all put together.

There are many good views of London : one of them is from the opposite side of the river, where you see the city, Blackfriars' Bridge, and St. Paul's Cathedral. There are such crowds of people going along the streets of London, that it is sometimes difficult to pass through them. A stoppage in Cheapside is a common occurrence.

Many years ago, an Indian went from America to London. He wanted to find out how many people there were in England ; so he took a long stick, and determined to cut a little notch in it with his penknife for every person he met. His stick was soon covered with notches, and he threw it away in despair.

As soon as I could, I went with Leo about London. He was a great traveller, and had been in London before. One of the first things we went to see was the palace of St. James, where the monarch sometimes resides. We then went to Westminster Abbey, a very large church built several hundred years ago.

In this church, many of the most celebrated men that

---

What story can you tell of an Indian who went to England?  
What can you say of St. James's palace?



WESTMINSTER ABBEY.

have ever lived in England are buried, and the kings and queens of England are crowned there, with great pomp and solemnity.

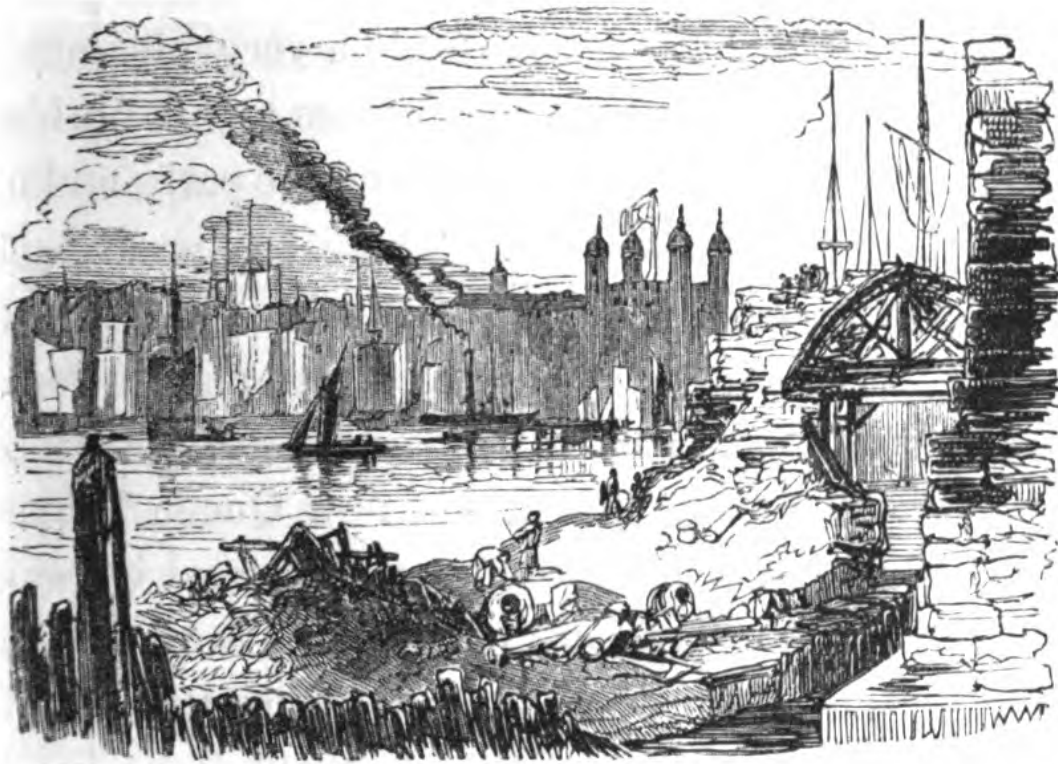
We then went to the Tower, once used as a prison, in which a great many persons in old times were cruelly murdered. At the Tower we saw a collection of wild beasts; among which were some lions and tigers: but this collection is now removed. There are still to be seen in the Tower

---

What of Westminster Abbey?



many splendid crowns and sceptres, set with pearls and jewels of great value, which have been worn by the kings and queens of England, during many reigns.



THE TOWER OF LONDON.

I will tell you a story which is told of what once happened in the Tower. Many years ago, there was in England a young king, of the name of Edward; he was only twelve years old; he had a wicked uncle whose name was Richard, nicknamed Crookback.

Now Richard Crookback wanted to be king himself; so he had little king Edward shut up in the Tower, with his younger brother, and they were both killed. Richard

Crookback was then made king, and was called Richard the Third.

We now went into one of the parks. These parks are beautiful, smooth grounds, with forest trees planted in groups, and arranged so as to have a very pleasant effect. You see many persons walking in them ; and nothing can be more agreeable than to stroll along the paths and observe the various people that pass. There are now Zoological Gardens at London, well supplied with wild beasts and birds, and well stocked with choice trees and flowers.

In the evening we went to the theatre. At that time a king reigned over England, but now Queen Victoria sits on the throne. Well, the king was there, and it was a good opportunity to see him. He wore gold lace on his coat, and a star of beautiful diamonds on his left breast. He bowed several times to the people, who clapped their hands and seemed delighted to see him. At the end of the play, the audience, amounting to several thousands, all stood up, and sang "God save the king." Their voices were much louder than the beautiful band of music which was playing at the same time.

I had not sat long in the theatre when I chanced to

---

What can you say of the Tower?

What story can you tell of what once took place in the Tower?

Describe the parks of London.

feel for my pocket-book, in which I had a small sum of money : it was gone. I then felt for my watch : that was gone also. It was clear that I had been robbed, but how, or by whom, I could not tell.

It had been done with so much skill that I could not guess who had done it. I therefore said nothing of my loss, but determined to be more cautious in future. Let me, however, give you one piece of advice ; if you ever go to London, take good care of your pocket-book and your watch !

It was past midnight, and Leo and I now set out for our lodgings. As we were passing through a dark narrow lane, we heard a groan like that of a person in distress. It seemed to proceed from a small house, and we stopped to listen. We ventured to knock at the door of a ground room, whence the sound appeared to come, but no answer was returned.

I pushed at the door, and it opened. In the room was a faint lamp, and on a miserable bed lay a woman who was dying. By her side were two children, one about six years old and the other about seven. The youngest was asleep ;

---

How does Parley describe the king of England ?

What happened to Parley in the theatre ?

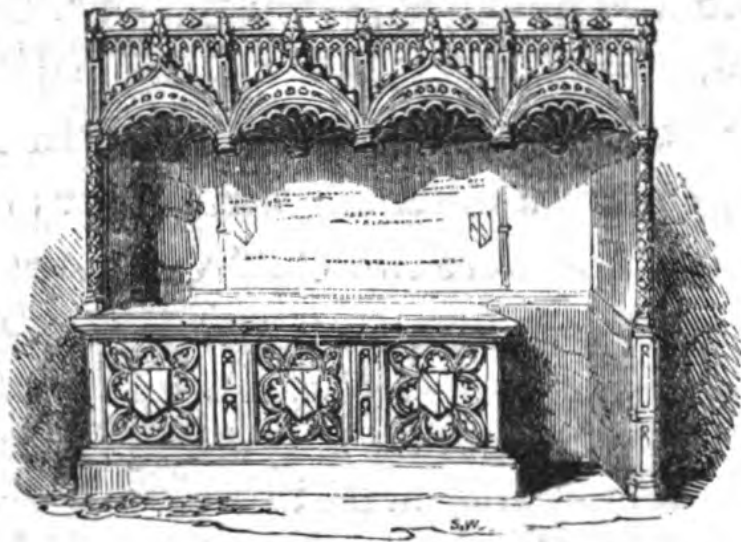
What scene did Parley and Leo witness one night as they were going to their lodgings ?

but the other was awake, and, with tears and cries, kissing the cold cheek of its mother.

I ran into the street, and cried aloud for help, but no one answered me. I rapped at the doors of the houses around, but nobody came. I went back and found the woman was dead. Leo and myself waited till morning; we then found some kind people who took care of the children, and the mother was decently buried.

It seemed she had died of hunger. Alas! thought I, that anybody should die of hunger in such a rich city as London! Yet, I assure you, that there is a great deal of want and misery there.

The knowledge of others' wants ought to make us the more thankful for our own comforts, and more ready to relieve distress.



CHAUCER'S MONUMENT IN WESTMINSTER ABBEY.



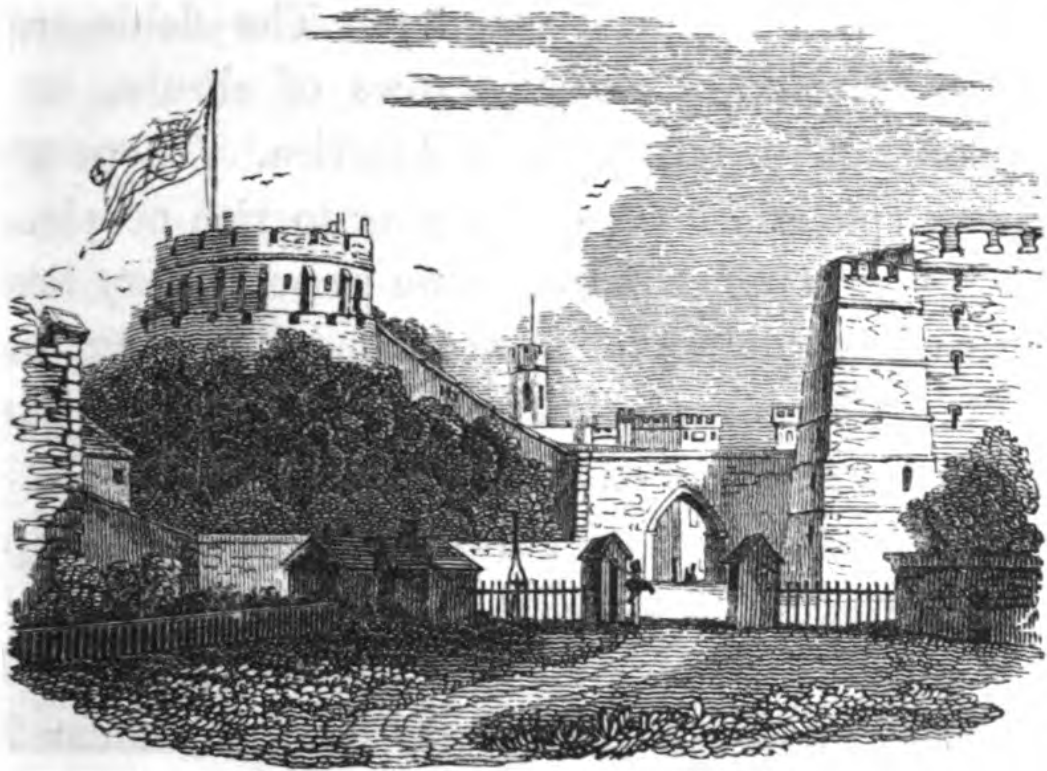






## CHAPTER V.

PARLEY GOES TO SEE THE KING'S CASTLE AT WINDSOR.



WINDSOR CASTLE.

HAVE you never heard of Windsor Castle? It is about twenty miles from London, and the Queen of England now lives there a great part of her time. It is a great building, having high stone walls, within which is a palace, with many other houses joined to it. Here is a view of Windsor Castle.

The royal flag of England is flying on the round tower. It is situated on a hill, and from it the prospect is delightful.

I had often heard of Windsor Castle, and I wished very much to see it.

England is a beautiful country. The fields are very green, and divided by *hedges*—rows of shrubs, or small trees—and not by *fences*, as in America. There are also many very splendid houses belonging to rich people.

As I was going to Windsor we passed a very beautiful house, with gardens and flowers, and blooming trees all around it. "Whose mansion is that?" said I to a man who was sitting next to me on the coach.

"It is the seat of Lord Percy," he replied. We passed another very splendid mansion. "Who lives there?" said I. "The Duke of Sussex," said the stranger. "Whose seat is that?" I asked, pointing to another similar house. "That," said he, "is the residence of the Earl of Harrowby."

"I am a stranger in this country," said I to the person of whom I asked these questions. "Will you do me the

---

What can you say of Windsor Castle?  
How does Parley describe England?

favour to tell me something about these Lords, Earls, and Dukes?" "I will tell you with pleasure," said the gentleman.

"In England we have a class of persons, called Barons, Viscounts, Earls, Marquesses, and Dukes; they are called *lords*, and are sometimes denominated the *nobility*. They live in great houses, and are generally very rich."

After a ride of about two hours, I reached Windsor Castle. The king was not there, and I was permitted to go through the several apartments. They were beautifully furnished, and several of them were adorned with charming pictures.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### PARLEY TELLS ABOUT THE KINGS OF ENGLAND.

IN the Castle at Windsor there is a beautiful church, called St. George's Chapel. I went to see this church. Several of the kings of England were buried in it. Thus you see that kings must die as well as other people. In

---

Who are the nobility of England? Describe the nobility.

How long did it take Parley to go from London to Windsor Castle?

this chapel is also buried the Princess Charlotte, who would now have been the queen of England, if she had lived. Everybody expected her to be a very famous queen. I will tell you something about her which you will like. A poor man was going to be hung. His friends thought that if they could but get this young princess to intercede for him, his life would be spared. She promised to do what she could, and, placing herself where she knew the king, her grandfather, would soon pass, she fell on her knees, and said she would not rise till he had pronounced the poor man's pardon. This he readily did, being himself of a very humane disposition. The young princess was not more than thirteen when this happened. At her death, everybody put on mourning, and there was great grief in all the kingdom.

Kings live in great houses, called palaces. They ride in fine coaches, with six and sometimes eight horses. All the people obey them for they are their subjects. England has had a great many kings. Some of them have been good, but many of them have been bad.

You will some time read the history of the kings of England. You will find it very interesting, but you will

---

What does Parley say of kings?

What does Parley say of the kings of England?



learn that many of them have been guilty of very wicked actions.

Do you know what a queen is? A queen is a king's wife. When a woman reigns, she is a queen, as Victoria I. is queen of England.



QUEEN VICTORIA.

I will tell you a story of a queen of England who lived many years ago. She was the wife of King Henry VI., and her name was Margaret. Her husband was a weak king, and his enemies rose against him and put him in prison; they then pursued Margaret, but she fled from them into the woods, taking her little son with her. Here she wandered about, and at length was met by a robber.

Robbers, you know, are wicked men, who lurk about in woods and other places, to attack people and to take their money from them. Well, the robber came up to Margaret, and told her to give him all the money she had: but Margaret replied, "I have no money; I am your queen, and this boy is the son of your king."

The robber was very much surprised, and so he knelt down and begged the queen's pardon, and then he led her out of the woods and conducted her to a place of safety.

I will tell you a story of another queen. Her name was Mary. There were a good many people in England, who did not believe exactly as she did about religion. She commanded them to change their opinions and think with her; but they could not.

Then she caused three hundred of them, in the course of her reign, to be put in great fires, and burnt to death! Some of them were men, some were women, and some were children. This cruel queen is generally called Bloody

COUNTRIES  
MENTIONED IN THE  
BIBLE.

100 200  
English Miles.

A S I A M I N O R

MEDITERRANEAN  
S E A

Euxine Sea

Caspian Sea

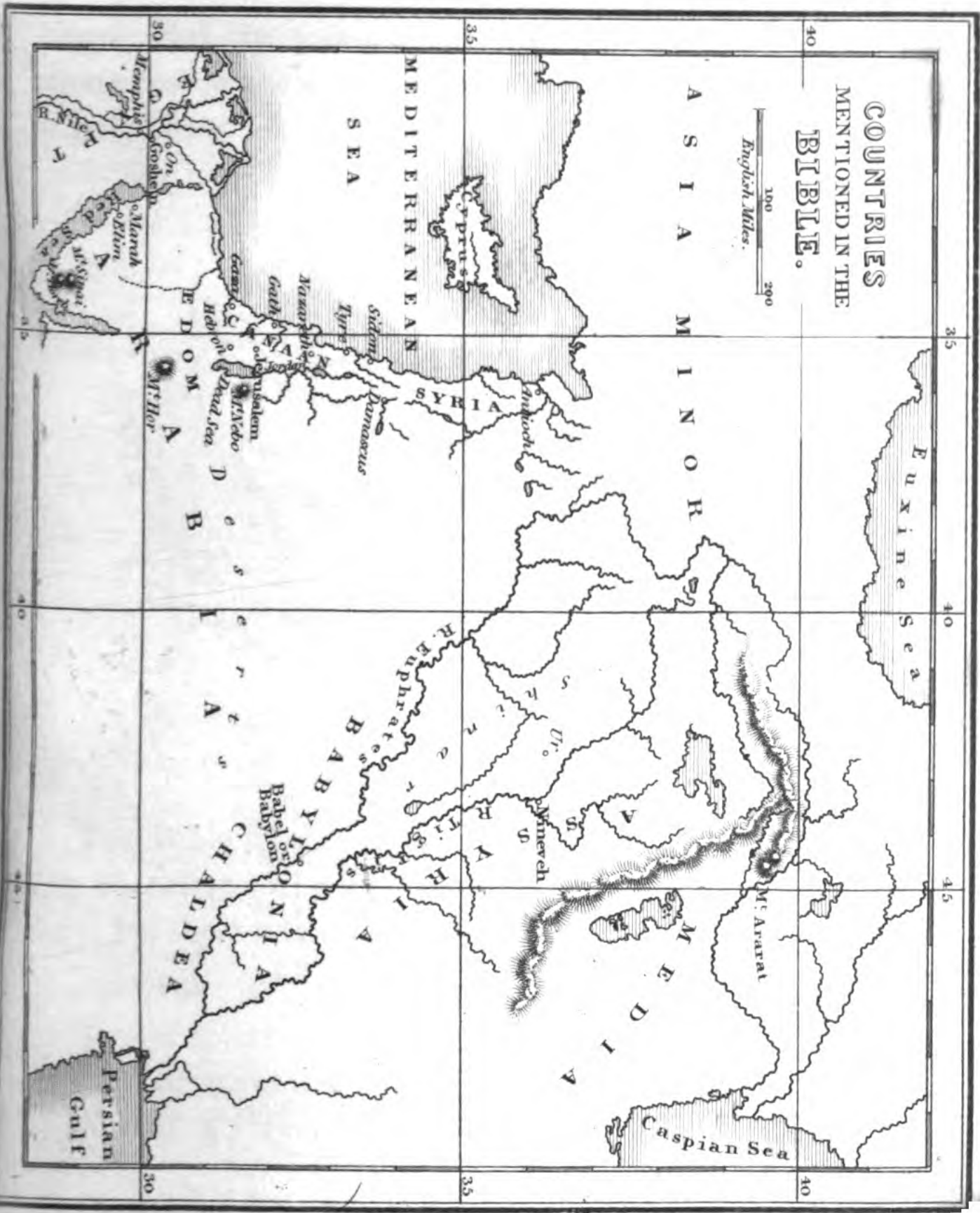
Persian  
Gulf

SYRIA  
Damascus  
Tyre  
Sidon  
Hama  
Gath  
Jerusalem  
Bethlehem  
Hebron  
Dead Sea  
Mt. Hermon

B A B Y L O N I A  
CHALDEA  
Babel or Babylon  
R. Euphrates

M E D I A  
Mt. Ararat

M E D I O M O R I A  
Mt. Lebanon  
Marah  
Sin  
Mt. Sion  
Mt. Zion  
R. Nile  
Memphis  
Thebes





Mary. But, in those times, even the best people were often cruel to those who differed from them on some points of religion.



THE BIBLE.

The Bible teaches us to “do justice and to love mercy.” All, therefore, who oppress others, and are unmerciful, deny, by their actions, the gospel of Jesus Christ.



## CHAPTER VII.

## PARLEY TELLS ABOUT ENGLAND.



INHABITANTS OF SCOTLAND.

WHEN I returned to London, I found that our vessel, the Bold Hero, was about to sail for Holland. I wished to stay and travel more in England, but I could not.

There are a great many large towns and cities in England, besides London. There is Liverpool, celebrated for mercantile traffic; Birmingham, where they make guns, swords, lamps, knives, and many other things; and Manchester, where they make calicoes and gingham; and many other famous places which I wished very much to see.

I wanted to go to Ireland, too, where the Irish live. It is an island very near to England, and belongs to it. There is Scotland, too, which joins England on the north. Scotland is a beautiful country, and the Scotch are a very interesting and intelligent people.

The people in the mountains speak Erse, a language very different from the English, and wear a sort of petticoat instead of small-clothes; in the lowlands they speak and dress like the English: so you see there are two very different sorts of people in Scotland.

If you will look on the map, you will see all these places. I wanted very much to visit them, but could not, for our vessel was ready to sail. I had parted with Leo, who had returned to Italy. I went on board our ship, and we set sail for Holland.

Thus I have told you about England. It is a beautiful country, full of towns and cities, and crowded with inhabitants. There are more than twenty-seven millions of people in Great Britain and Ireland. This is almost twice as many as there are in the United States of America.

Great Britain includes England and Scotland. Many of the people are exceedingly rich, but many thousands are poor.

The history of great Britain is very interesting: I will tell you of it in my Tales about Great Britain and Ireland.

Eighteen hundred years ago, Great Britain was inhabited by wild savages ; but for about ten centuries, it has been gradually rising in civilisation, and is now one of the most enlightened nations on the earth. It has had many kings, and has produced many great men. It is the richest and most powerful nation in the world.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

### PARLEY GOES TO HOLLAND.

WE now hoisted our sails, and went down the river Thames. I have told you that great numbers of ships sail up and down this fine river. We had nearly reached the mouth of the river when night came on.

There was a fresh breeze, and the darkness of the night was increased by a thick fog. Our vessel was going very fast, when we were suddenly alarmed by a great noise and shock, as if we had struck a rock.

---

What can you say of England ? How many people are there in Great Britain ? What does Great Britain include ? What is said of the people ? What was their character many centuries ago ? What is said of the present power and wealth of Great Britain ?

Which is the largest town in Holland ?





DUTCHMAN TRAVELLING.

We soon perceived that we had run against another vessel with such force that she was sinking. We had just time to get the persons in her on board our vessel, when she sank in the waves and disappeared.

The persons whom we had taken out of the vessel were the captain, his wife, two children, and two sailors. The captain's name was Hatterick.

He was a Dutchman, and came from Amsterdam, the largest town in Holland. He had learned to speak English, and he told me that his wife and family had lived for several years in his little ship, and always went with him in his voyages.

Such things, I learned afterwards, were not uncommon with the seafaring people of Holland. In about six days we arrived at Amsterdam.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### PARLEY TELLS ABOUT HOLLAND.

AMSTERDAM is the largest town in Holland, as I said before.

You know the people of Holland are called Dutch.

I have told you before that the Dutch speak a language unlike ours. They have different names for everything : thus they call a house *huis*; a horse, *paard*; a dog, *hund*.

As I did not understand the Dutch language, I could not tell what the people said; they only seemed to jabber like monkeys.

I wanted to go about Amsterdam, and so Captain Hatterick went with me. As we were passing along the streets, I observed a very curious kind of carriage, much used here.

It is formed by putting the body of a coach on a sledge drawn by one horse.

---

What are the people of Holland called ?





AN AMSTERDAM SLEDGE COACH.

While I was going about Amsterdam with Captain Hatterick, he told me a good deal about Holland. He said that there were a great many other large cities in Holland besides Amsterdam.

There is Rotterdam, Haarlem, Leyden, and many other large towns. The king usually resides at a large town called the Hague.

The country of Holland is generally very flat, and is

---

What large cities are there in Holland besides Amsterdam? Where does the king reside? What can you say of Holland?

crossed in every direction by canals, on which people travel a great deal in boats. A great part of the country was once covered by the sea ; but the people built strong dikes, or dams, along the shore, and thus they keep the waters from covering their land.

But sometimes the sea breaks down the dam, and the water overflows the country. Such accidents produce great distress, and often destroy the lives of many people.

Captain Hatterick told me a very singular story about the Dutch people. There is a bird very common in Holland, called the stork. A stork looks something like a turkey, but it has a longer neck, and is white, with black wings.

It is said that when a stork grows old, and is too feeble to fly, a young stork takes him on his back, and carries him about in the air.

Well, the people of Holland are very fond of these birds, and love to have them build their nests upon their houses. They think that no evil can happen to a house that has a stork's nest upon it. They treat the storks very kindly ; they never shoot, nor scare them, and consequently these birds come about the houses of the people, and build their nests upon them.

---

What is told of the stork?

## CHAPTER X.

## PARLEY TELLS ABOUT PETER THE GREAT.



HOUSE WHERE PETER THE GREAT LIVED AT SAARDAM.

A FEW miles from Amsterdam there is a little town called Saardam. Here they used to build a great many ships. Somewhat more than a hundred years ago, there were a great many carpenters at work at the ships in Saardam.

Among the rest was one called Master Peter. Now

who do you think this Master Peter was? I will tell you. He was the king of Russia!

When the other carpenters found out that Master Peter was a king, they were much surprised, and wondered that he should be there at work as a carpenter. "I will tell you the whole story," said Peter.

"I am king of the Russian empire. It lies many hundred miles to the north. My people are ignorant; they do not know how to build ships. I have come here to learn how to build ships, and when I have learned I shall go back and teach my people."

So, after a few years, Peter went back to Russia, and taught the people how to build ships; he also taught them many other things.

Peter built a splendid city in Russia, called St. Petersburg, and did so many great deeds that he became famous



PETER THE GREAT.

---

Where was it that Peter the Great lived and worked as a ship carpenter?

What reason did Peter give for working as a ship carpenter?



all over the world, and consequently he is now called by the name of Peter the Great.

It is a good sign when good deeds are honored. Blood may be shed, and great victories may be won by the selfish, the vain-glorious, and the proud, but they only are truly great who delight in goodness and humanity.

---

## CHAPTER XI.

### PARLEY GOES TO COPENHAGEN.

HAVING stayed a few days at Amsterdam, we took leave of that city and sailed for Denmark. If you will look on a map of Europe, you will be able to trace the course we took. In a few days we arrived at Copenhagen, the largest city in Denmark.

The Danes have a language of their own. I could not understand it better than I could the language of the Dutch.

I was one evening walking about the streets of the city, when I saw a crowd of persons. I went among them, and perceived that they were dragging a man along, who was speaking to them in English.

---

What city did Peter build? What made him famous?

By what name is he now called?

What is the largest city in Denmark?



He begged them to let him go, but they did not understand a word he said. What was my astonishment to discover that this man was one whom I had known long before! His name was James Jenkins. I will tell you more about him before I have done.

I had no sooner discovered this man to be Jenkins, than I rushed in among the crowd and endeavoured to rescue him; I struck down one of the men who held him, pushed the others aside, and then told Jenkins to run. We both started, but were immediately overtaken.

Two or three men seized Jenkins, and four or five laid hold of me. It was in vain to talk to these people, for they could not understand a word of our language. We were taken to prison, and both of us confined in a dungeon.

Jenkins now told me, that a man had robbed a gentleman of his watch in the street, and that he was himself mistaken for the robber. This was the cause of his being attacked in the streets.

I sent to Captain Philips to inform him of our situation. The next day he came to see us. He went to the magistrates of the city, and in a few days we were set at liberty.

I stayed but a short time in Copenhagen, but I obtained

---

What is the character of the Danes?

what information I could respecting the Danes. The people seem to be very fond of dancing.

I was one evening going along one of the streets of Copenhagen, and I saw a man lying on the pavement ; I went to him, and found he was drunk. The weather was cold, and the man's fingers were frozen ; I obtained assistance, and he was taken to his house.

He had a wife and three children. In the course of the night he died, and left his family in the greatest distress. It was a shocking scene ; and I resolved, then, that I would take every proper opportunity to warn people against intemperance.

Denmark is a very flat country, and is subject to fogs. The number of its inhabitants is above two millions. The name of the present king is Frederick the Seventh.

---

## CHAPTER XII.

PARLEY LEAVES COPENHAGEN, AND TELLS ABOUT SWEDEN.

HAVING been about a month at Copenhagen, we left that place and sailed for St. Petersburg in Russia. I hope you will look at the map of Europe. You will see that

---

What can you say of the surface of the country of Denmark? What is the number of inhabitants? What is the name of the present king?

our course lay through the Baltic Sea. I persuaded Jenkins to enter on board our vessel, and so he went to St. Petersburg with us.

Jenkins left America before I did. He had been to Stockholm, the largest town in Sweden: and while we sailed along through the Baltic, he told me a good deal about his adventures.

Stockholm is a very large city. Jenkins remained there several weeks. He told me of a curious custom in Stockholm. At night, there are men called watchmen, who go about the city, and as they pass along the streets they exclaim, "May the good and all-powerful arm of God preserve our city from fire and flames!"

Sweden is an extensive country, covered with rocks, woods, and mountains. The people are mild, amiable, and religious. There are about three millions and a quarter of inhabitants.

On the first day in May, it is their custom to make large fires in the fields, to express their joy at the departure of winter, which is very severe in Sweden.

On Midsummer's day they give themselves up to amusement. On the night before, they erect a pole in the open air, and the young men and women dance around it till morning.

---

Which is the largest city in Sweden?

Having retired to rest for a few hours, they go to the church, and, after asking the protection of Heaven, they again engage in amusement.

I will now tell you a story of a very remarkable Swedish king, who lived a good many years ago. His name was Charles the Twelfth. He became king when he was but fifteen years old.

The kings of Denmark, Poland, and Russia, who lived near him, thought Charles was so young that they would be able to take his kingdom from him.



CHARLES THE TWELFTH.

While they were preparing to attack him, Charles suddenly raised a small army of brave men, and landed in Denmark.

Here he was met by an army of Danes, and a fierce battle was fought between the Swedes and Danes; but the Swedes gained the victory, and Charles made the Danish king promise to undertake no more mischief against him.

---

Describe Sweden. What is the character of the inhabitants? What is their number? What custom have the Swedes on the departure of winter? What custom have they on the first day of May?



He next, at a place named Narva, defeated a Russian army, commanded by Peter, which was four times as strong as his own.

Charles now marched his army into Poland, drove the king of Poland from his throne, and placed another there in his stead. Charles was so animated by his success, that he determined to attack the Russians in their own country.

At a town called Pultowa, the army of Charles met the army of the Russian king, and here they fought a severe battle. Charles's army was beaten, and nearly all were killed. Charles fled from the field with a few followers, but he was closely pursued by his enemies.

After a long and weary journey, he arrived in Turkey, and sought the protection of the Turkish Sultan. To save himself from his enemies, Charles now pretended to be sick, and lay ten months in bed.

At length he determined to escape to his own country if possible. He was surrounded with enemies ; and, being in Turkey, he was many hundred miles from Sweden, as you will see by looking on a map. But, taking two friends with him, he escaped from his enemies, and after many dangers, he reached Sweden.

But Charles could not keep himself from making war, so he went to attack the people of Norway with twenty thousand men. As he was one day passing near his



enemies, they fired a cannon at him, the ball of which struck him and killed him instantly.

When you get to be a little older, you should read the history of Charles the Twelfth. You will find it highly interesting: it will teach you that he was a very brave man; it will also teach you that, like too many other kings, Charles preferred his own fame to the good of his people, and that, to gratify his ambition, he caused many thousands to be killed in battle, and thousands more to suffer the greatest distress.

---

## CHAPTER XIII.

### PARLEY TELLS ABOUT NORWAY.

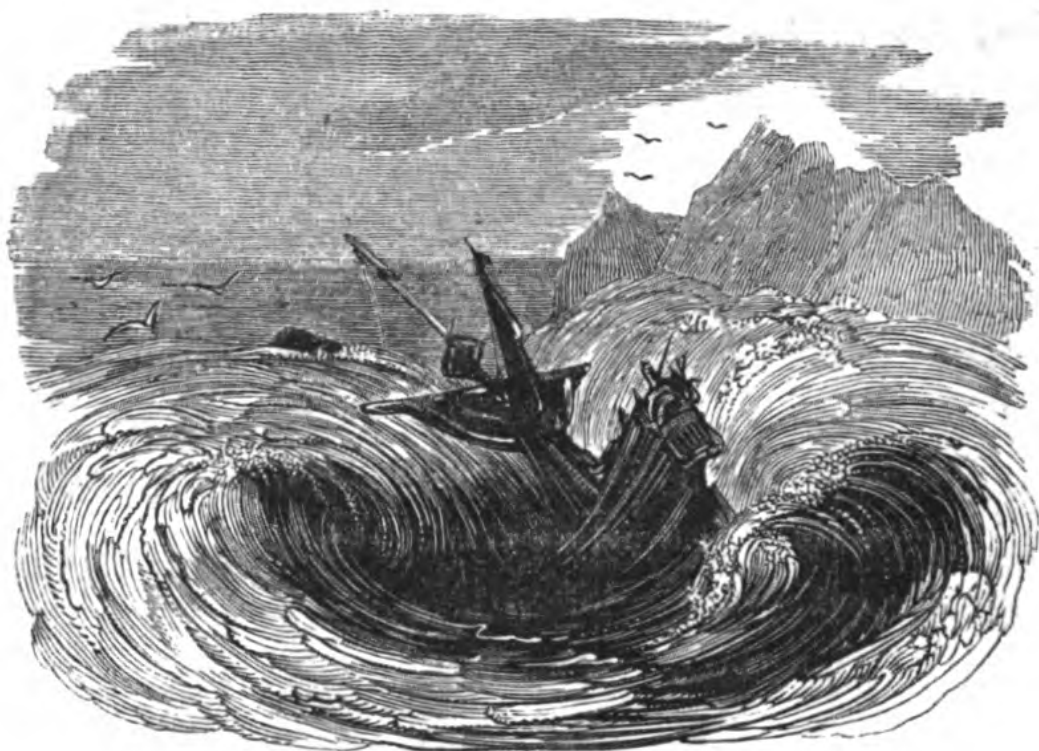
NORWAY lies in the northern part of Europe, and is a very cold country. The people speak the same language as the Danes: they are not, like the Danes, addicted to drunkenness, and are an honest and hospitable people.

There is what is called a dreadful whirlpool in the sea on the coast of Norway, called the *Maelstrom*, but more is said of it than what is true.

The water in this whirlpool, say some, runs round in the most furious manner. It roars with a noise like thun-

---

What did Charles do to gratify his ambition?



WHIRLPOOL ON THE COAST OF NORWAY.

der. If ships happen to be sailing near it, they are drawn into it and dashed to pieces.

Whales are sometimes forced into it and killed. When they feel themselves drawn towards it by the current, they become sensible of their danger, and endeavour to escape; but finding they cannot, they utter piteous moans as they are forced along by the water.

Jenkins did not go into Norway, but while he was in Sweden he heard a good deal about it, which he told me. He says that there are a great many bears in Norway; but they seldom do any injury to the inhabitants.

---

What does this whirlpool do?

A Norwegian was once about to cross a river in a boat. While he was sitting in one end of the boat, a bear, very gravely walked into the other end of it, and seated himself.

The boatman rowed across the river; the bear then jumped upon the land and ran into the wood, without offering to pay toll, or even saying so much to the boatman as "thank you."

The people of Norway have some very curious customs. At a funeral, while carrying the body to the grave, a man goes before the coffin playing on the fiddle. In some parts of the country, the people speak to the dead body, and ask him why he died? whether his wife and neighbours were kind to him? and many other childish questions.

There are about a million and a quarter of people in Norway. They have no king of their own nation, but the people acknowledge the king of Sweden as their ruler. The largest town is Bergen. In summer the weather is very hot. But in winter it is exceedingly cold, and the inhabitants

---

What animals are numerous in Norway? What story is told of the Norwegian and bear?

What curious customs have the Norwegians at a funeral?

What number of people are there in Norway? Which is the largest town in Norway? Whom do they acknowledge as king?

What is the weather in summer? What in winter?

wrap themselves up in furs. About one hundred years ago, an army of Swedes, consisting of seven thousand men, were frozen to death while crossing one of the mountains of Norway. When they were found, some of them were sitting up, some were lying down, and others were kneeling; all were stiff and dead.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

### PARLEY TELLS ABOUT LAPLAND.

LAPLAND is the most northern part of Europe. There are no large towns in Lapland. The country is desolate and barren, and the people wander about, living in huts in winter, and in tents, made of deerskin, in summer.

The winter continues for nine months in the year; and the cold is excessive. In winter, the nights are very

---

What story is related of the effects of the cold ?

Where is Lapland ? Are there any large towns in Lapland ?

Describe the country and people.



long ; but they are rendered less gloomy by beautiful lights in the sky, called aurora-borealis.



A LAPLANDER AND HIS HUT.

The people of Lapland have a high opinion of black cats. Almost every family has a black cat, which they talk to, and ask its advice, as if it could really understand them. Whenever the people go on fishing or hunting parties, they take a black cat with them.

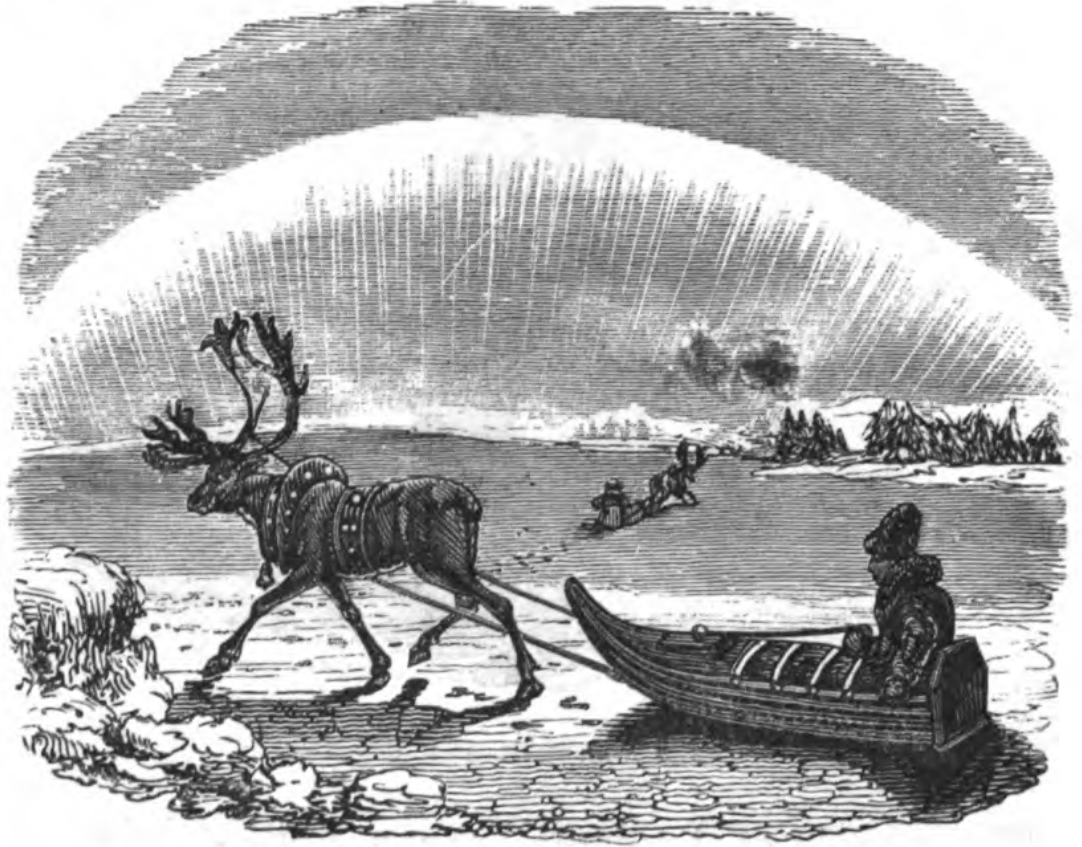
You know that the people of Lapland ride about on sledges drawn by reindeer. The reindeer is a very swift

---

How long does the winter continue ? What is said of the nights in Lapland ?



animal, and will carry a person thirty or forty miles without stopping.



A LAPLAND SLEDGE AND REINDEER.

If we thought more of the usefulness of animals, and reflected how much they add to our comfort, we should feel more kindly towards them than we do. The dog, the reindeer, the llama, the camel, the ox, the horse, and the elephant, are of great use in different countries, in bearing burdens, and removing them from one place to another.

CHAPTER XV.

PARLEY TELLS ABOUT ST. PETERSBURG.



THE EMPEROR OF RUSSIA.

In a few weeks after we sailed from Copenhagen, we arrived at St. Petersburg.

St. Petersburg is one of the largest cities in Russia. It is larger than New York, in North America. The czar, emperor, or king of Russia, resides there. The present emperor is Nicholas I. This place was built by Peter the Great, as I have before told you, a little more than a hundred years ago.

The people of Russia are generally ignorant, but they are cheerful in their dispositions. The greater part of the inhabitants are slaves, belonging to rich men, who often treat them with great cruelty.

Russia is one of the largest countries in the world. It has more than sixty millions of people. The greater part of them, however, are poor, and uncivilised, and many of them are scarcely better off than American savages.

I stayed at St. Petersburg about two months. While there, I gained a good deal of knowledge about Russia. I one day met with an English trader who had been to Moscow, and he told me much about it. Moscow is the largest city in Russia. Peter the Great was born there.

---

What is said of St. Petersburg?

How long is it since St. Petersburg was built? Describe the inhabitants of Russia. How many people are there in Russia?

Which is the largest city in Russia?

About forty years ago, Napoleon Bonaparte, emperor of France, went with an immense army against Russia. He entered Moscow with his soldiers, expecting to spend a pleasant winter there. But the Russians set fire to the city; the flames spread from house to house, and from street to street. Bonaparte and his army fled in dismay. For several days the fire raged in the city, and vast sheets of flame spread over it, and a broad black cloud of smoke rose from the ruins of the place. Nine tenths of the city were destroyed.



BONAPARTE.

Bonaparte and his army were overtaken in their retreat by the winter, which in Russia is very severe. Thousands of the poor soldiers were frozen to death, and buried beneath the snow. Few, indeed, of that great army lived to get back to France, and tell the sad story of their sufferings!

I must tell you about the manner of travelling in

---

Who came against Russia with a great army?

What was the fate of Bonaparte's army in Russia?

winter, in Russia, for it is singular. They have very large sleighs, covered with furs, drawn by four or six horses; and, on long journeys, the travellers eat and sleep in



RUSSIAN BOOR.

these sleighs. In this way, they get along very comfortably, even when the weather is exceedingly cold.

While I was in St. Petersburg, I heard a very interesting story, about a young woman called Prascovia. I think you will be pleased with this story, so I will tell it to you.

---

What is the manner of travelling in Russia in the winter?



## CHAPTER XVI.

## STORY OF PRASCOVIA.

THERE once lived in Russia a man named Lopouloff. In some way or other, he had offended the emperor, or czar of Russia. The king was very angry, and so he sent Lopouloff, and his wife and little daughter, far away, into Siberia.

Siberia is a desolate country, and is many hundred miles from St. Petersburg. They were very unhappy in Siberia. The country was covered with woods, and these woods were filled with wild beasts. Besides, they had no pleasant friends there, and nobody can be happy without friends around them.

Prascovia, the little daughter of Lopouloff, came, at length, to be fifteen years old; she was a very good girl, and loved her parents dearly. One day she discovered that her father was very sad, and that her mother was weeping. "Oh! my dear parents," said Prascovia, "why are you so miserable? Tell me, and I will try to make you happy."

"My dear child," said the mother of Prascovia, "we once lived in the city of St. Petersburg. There we were

---

Can you tell the story of Prascovia?

rich, there we had friends, and there we were happy. But the emperor was angry, and he sent us far away to this wild country. Here we are, poor, alone, and wretched."

"My dear mother," said Prascovia, "let me go to the emperor. I will tell him that my father is innocent. I will tell him that you are unhappy. I will pray him to let you return to St. Petersburg. The emperor is kind, and he will not refuse a request so reasonable."

The parents of Prascovia would not at first allow her to think of going to see the emperor. But she often entreated them to let her go, and, at length, they consented; though they had many fears that she would meet with dangers and misfortunes by the way.

Prascovia immediately prepared to set out for St. Petersburg. She had a very great distance to go; she had no one to go with her, and she had no money; but she fell on her knees, and asked God to take care of her in her long journey. She then bade her dear parents farewell, and set forward on foot to see the emperor.

I cannot tell you all that happened to Prascovia on her long journey; but I will tell you a part of her adventures. One day, as she was passing through a forest, it began to rain and blow very hard.

Pretty soon the wind blew down a large tree across her path; she was very much frightened, and she ran into a

thick part of the woods. Night soon came on, and she could not find the path. She wandered about in the darkness for a long time. She was very hungry, and very cold and wet. But she was obliged to stay in the woods all night.

In the morning, a man came along with a cart, and carried her to a village. In getting out of the cart, she fell into the mud and covered herself with it. She then went to some of the houses in the village, and told the people that she was very cold and very hungry.

They told her to go away, and called her a thief. She then went to the church, but the door was shut. She sat down upon the steps of the church, and the wicked boys came and called her a thief.

She now prayed Heaven to take care of her; and, by and by, a kind woman came and took poor Prascovia to her house, and gave her some food and some clothes. After staying a few days, Prascovia thanked the woman for her kindness and protection, and set out again on her journey.

As she was passing near a small village, on her way, she was attacked by several dogs. One of them caught hold of her frock with his teeth, and another endeavoured to bite her face. In this danger she again prayed for help: a man came from the village soon after, drove away the dogs, and saved Prascovia.

At length it came to be winter, and the winter in

Russia is far more severe than it is in this country. The snow was deep, and the wind was very cold. Prascovia's dress was thin, and she shivered as she travelled along the deep snow path.

Happily she was overtaken by some men with sledges, and one of them permitted her to ride. But she suffered so much from the cold, that she could have gone no further, had not one of the men permitted her to wear his sheepskin cloak. This kept her warm, and she went along very comfortably.

At length poor Prascovia was taken sick. She could not proceed on her journey, and for a long time she stayed with some charitable people who took care of her. By and by, she recovered, and again set out on her journey.

After more than a year, having travelled a vast distance, and suffered a great variety of distress, Prascovia arrived at St. Petersburg. She went to the palace of the emperor, and there she saw the empress, the emperor's wife. She received Prascovia with great kindness, and took her to the emperor.

Prascovia told him her story. He listened with wonder, and promised to set her father at liberty. He then gave her some money, and she went away.

The emperor soon sent a messenger to Prascovia's father in Siberia, to tell him he might return. Lopouloff and his wife received the intelligence with great joy. They soon set out for St. Petersburg, and arrived there in safety.



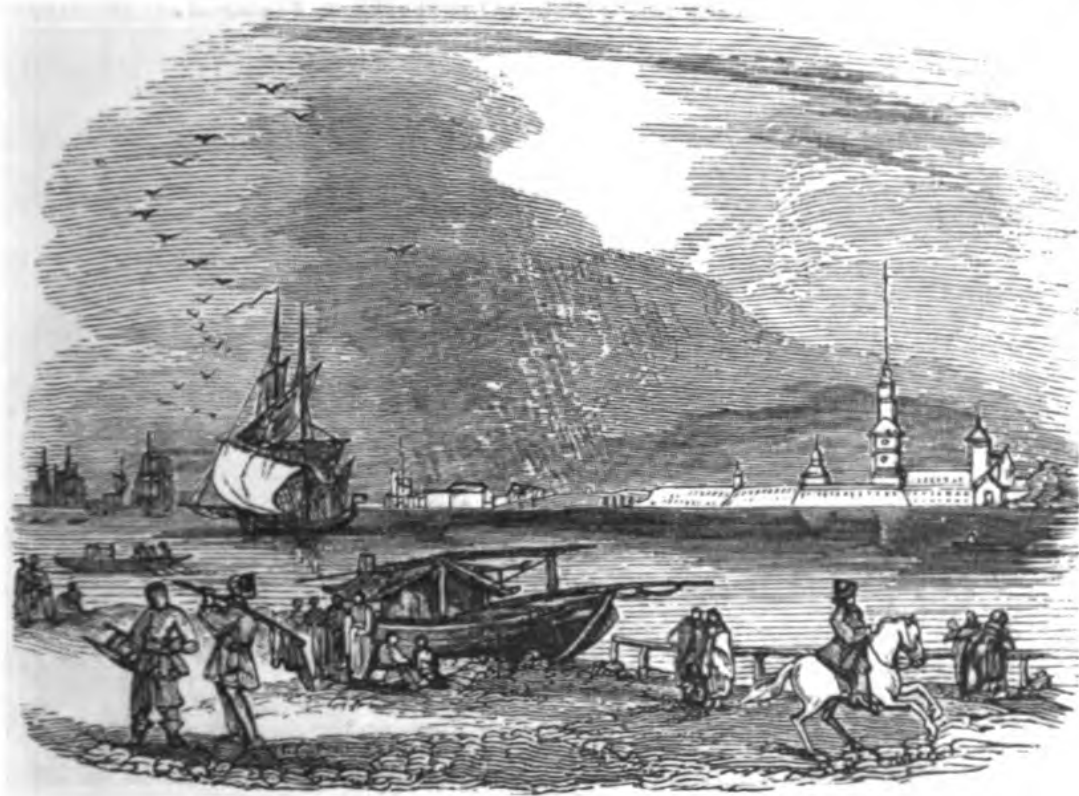
They here met their daughter, who was delighted to see them, and once more Lopouloff and his family were happy.

You see, by this tale of Prascovia, what a blessing an affectionate and obedient child is to a parent.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

PARLEY LEAVES ST. PETERSBURG, AND TRAVELS IN PRUSSIA.



VIEW OF ST. PETERSBURG.

SOON after we arrived at St. Petersburg, Captain Philips sold our vessel, the Bold Hero. There were other vessels at St. Petersburg, going to America, by which I



might have returned; but I was very anxious to travel through some of the countries of Europe.

I told my wishes to Jenkins, and we agreed to travel through Europe together. Accordingly we left St. Petersburg in a vessel, and sailed along the Baltic Sea, till we came to Dantzic, in Prussia. Here we landed.

We found Dantzic to be a very large and rich city. Jenkins and I remained there but a few days. We then set out for Berlin, the largest town in Prussia. Sometimes



VIEW OF BERLIN.

we travelled on foot, and sometimes we rode in the stage-coaches, which are here called speed-waggon.

We often found difficulty in making ourselves understood, for the people of Prussia use the German language; but Jenkins could speak a little French, and in almost every town we found persons who understood that language; so we got along pretty well.

There are a great many large forests in Prussia. Some years ago, as some huntsmen were passing through one of these forests, they saw a strange animal, looking something like a man. They pursued it, but it ran from them; they followed it for a long time; at length it entered a cave in one of the mountains.

Here they caught it, and what do you think it was? It was a wild man, who had always lived in the woods. He had no clothes, and he could not talk, but he could growl and chatter. He ate leaves and berries.

They took him away and tried to teach him to speak, but he would only chatter. He was very cross, and he would endeavour to strike everybody that did anything to displease him: poor fellow! he had never been taught better. I hope none of my little readers will ever behave like this wild man of the woods!

We arrived at length at Berlin. Berlin is the largest town in Prussia, as I said before. It is a very handsome place, and there is a high wall of stone built all around it.

The king of Prussia sometimes resides at Berlin, and sometimes at Potsdam. There are about as many people in Prussia as in the United States of America.

A very singular fashion prevails in some parts of Prussia. The men shave the hair from their heads, leaving only a small circle on the top.

I should like to tell you about a very extraordinary king, named Frederic, that lived in Prussia, being born in 1712, more than a hundred years ago. Several of the nations around him made war upon him with their armies. Frederic led his troops against them, and many battles were fought.

Sometimes Frederic and his army were beaten, but more frequently he overcame his enemies. Very few kings lead their own armies to battle ; but Frederic loved to be at the head of his army, and to share with his poor soldiers the dangers and sufferings of war. He was called Frederic the Great ; and he was rendered more truly great by his benevolence, than by his most renowned vic-



FREDERICK THE GREAT.

---

Which is the largest city in Prussia?

tories. Frederic the Great one day rang his bell several times, and nobody came. He opened the door and found his page asleep in an arm-chair in the adjoining chamber, where he ought always to have been waiting, in readiness to obey his royal master's summons. Going forward to awake him, he perceived the corner of a note peeping out of his pocket. Curious to know what it was, he took it without waking the page, and read it. It was a letter from the mother of the youth, thanking him for sending her part of his wages to relieve her poverty. She concluded by telling him that God would bless him for his good conduct. The king, after having read it, went softly into his room, took a purse of ducats, and slipped it, with the letter, into the pocket of the page. He then returned, and rang his bell so loud that the page awoke and went in. "Thou hast slept well," said the king. The page wished to excuse himself, and in his confusion, put his hand, by chance, into his pocket, and felt the purse with astonishment. He drew it out, turned pale, and, looking at the king, burst into tears, without being able to utter a word. "What is the matter?" said the king. "What hast thou?"

---

Where does the king of Prussia reside?

What can you say of King Frederic?



“ Ah! Sire,” replied the youth, falling on his knees, “ they wish to ruin me : I do not know how this money came



FREDERICK THE GREAT AND HIS PAGE.

into my pocket.” “ My friend,” said Frederic, “ God often sends us blessings while we are asleep. Send that to thy mother, salute her from me, and say that I will take care of her and thee.” Such an action as this is more to the praise of Frederic, than the greatest victory he ever obtained. You may be sure the poor page was overjoyed at being not only pardoned for having slept at his post,



but rewarded for the love he had shown to his absent mother.

King Frederic was a man of great learning, and he wrote several very valuable books; but if he had loved the Bible more, and the works of atheists less, he might have been both wiser and happier than he was. He died about seventy years ago.

---

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### PARLEY GOES TO VIENNA.

JENKINS and I, after staying about a week in Berlin, departed for Vienna, the capital of Austria. We travelled the whole distance on foot. We found the inns in Germany to be very singular. They are very much like large barns, in which the horses, cows, asses, pigs, and people, all have rooms.

Sometimes, while I was sleeping in these taverns, I was

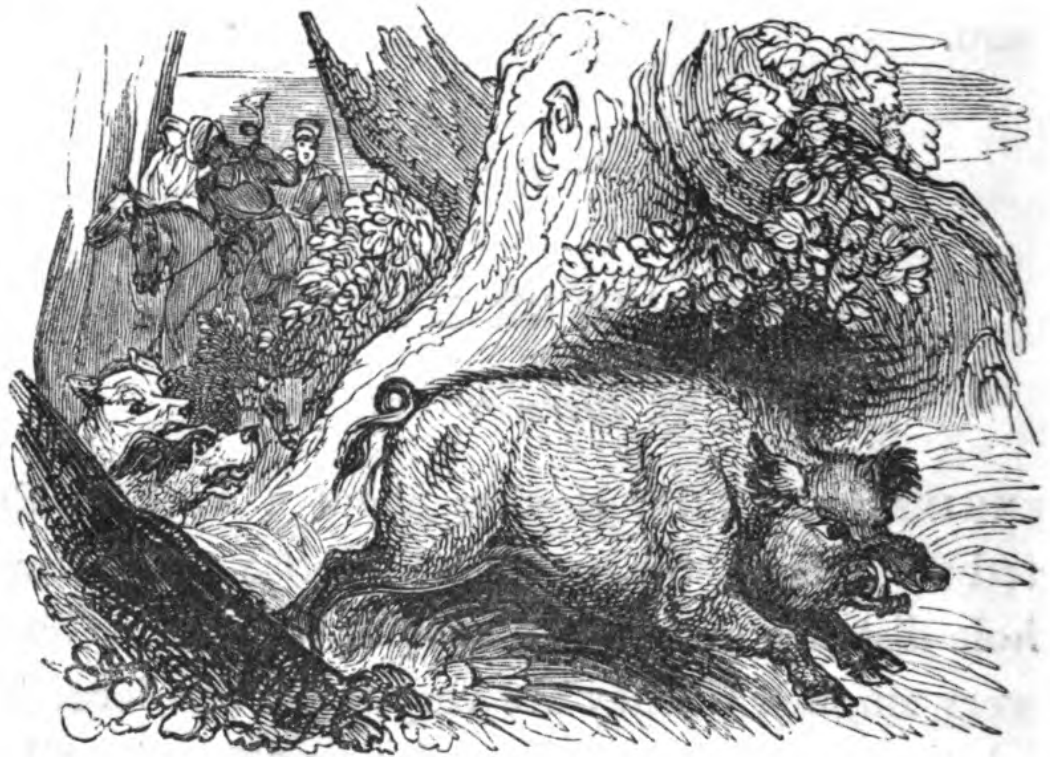
---

What kind of books did King Frederic write?

What is the capital of Austria called?

Describe the inns in Germany.

waked from my sleep by the neighing of a horse, or the braying of an ass; then a pig would squeal, and a cow would bellow. Jenkins was sometimes a little impatient, and he would call out to these animals to be still, but the more he said to them, the more noise they made.



WILD BOAR HUNT IN GERMANY.

In the forests of Germany, there are many wild boars, large fierce animals with long and dangerous tusks. It is a favourite sport with the gentlemen of Germany to hunt

---

What sport are the gentlemen in Germany fond of?

these animals. One day, when Jenkins and I had nearly reached Vienna, as we were passing through a forest, a huge wild boar ran across our path.

He was pursued by a dozen hounds, not far behind him, who yelled and ran after him with all their might. Then came several gentlemen on horseback, and away they scampered after the dogs.

By and by, we heard them coming back ; and soon we saw the boar come again from the forest into the road, where we were travelling. Here he was overtaken by the dogs, who sprang upon him. Some fastened their teeth in his ears, some in his sides.

But the boar shook them off, and springing upon the dogs, he killed two of them, by plunging his long teeth, or tusks, into their sides. At this moment one of the horsemen came to the spot ; he jumped from his horse and stood at a little distance.

The furious boar no sooner saw him, than he was on the point of striking him with his tusks. But, as he came forward, the skilful huntsman plunged a spear deep in his neck. The blood spouted from the boar's mouth ; he reeled and fell dead upon the ground.

The huntsman now blew a sharp whistle, and soon the other horsemen came galloping to the place. Several persons soon came up, and Jenkins and I went there also.

What was our surprise to learn that the man who had killed the boar, was the emperor of Austria. The other horsemen, were young Austrian lords, or noblemen.

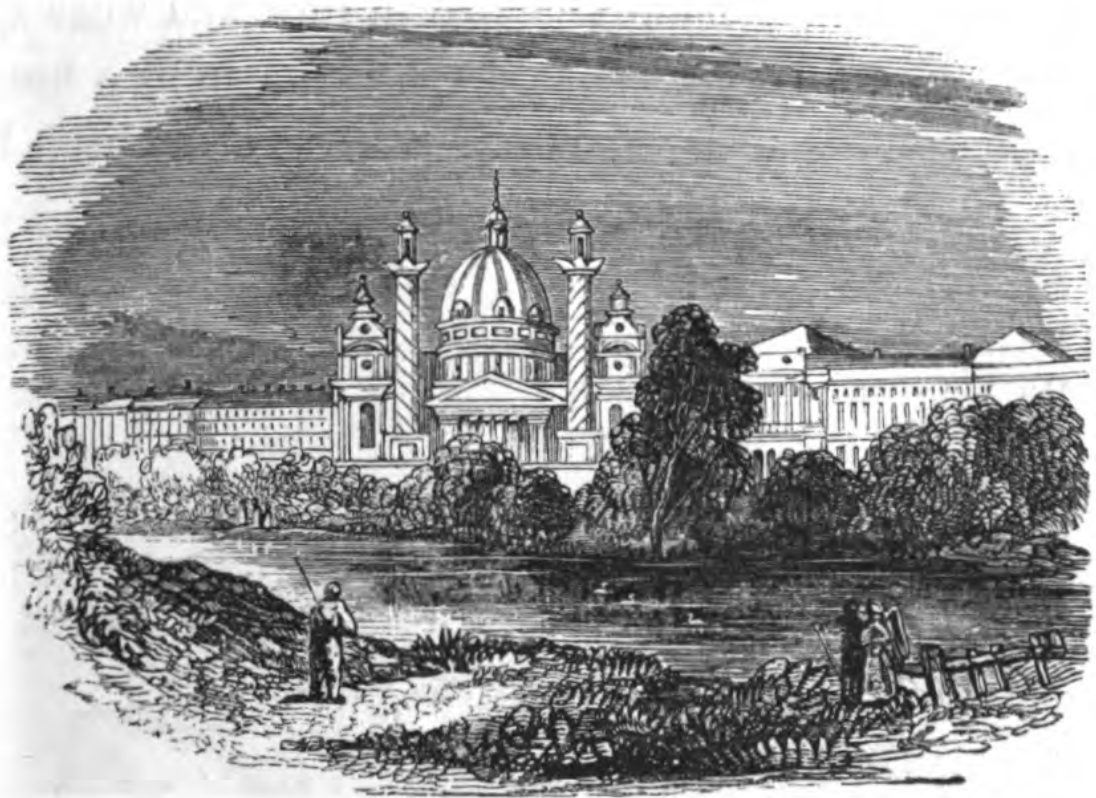
It would be very dangerous to attack such a furious animal without a spear, and without great courage and skill. Two days after this affair, we arrived at Vienna.



SHOOTING THE BOAR.

CHAPTER XIX.

PARLEY TELLS ABOUT VIENNA.



VIEW OF VIENNA.

VIENNA is situated on the Danube, one of the largest rivers of Europe, and is a beautiful and magnificent place. It is much larger than any city in the United States of America.

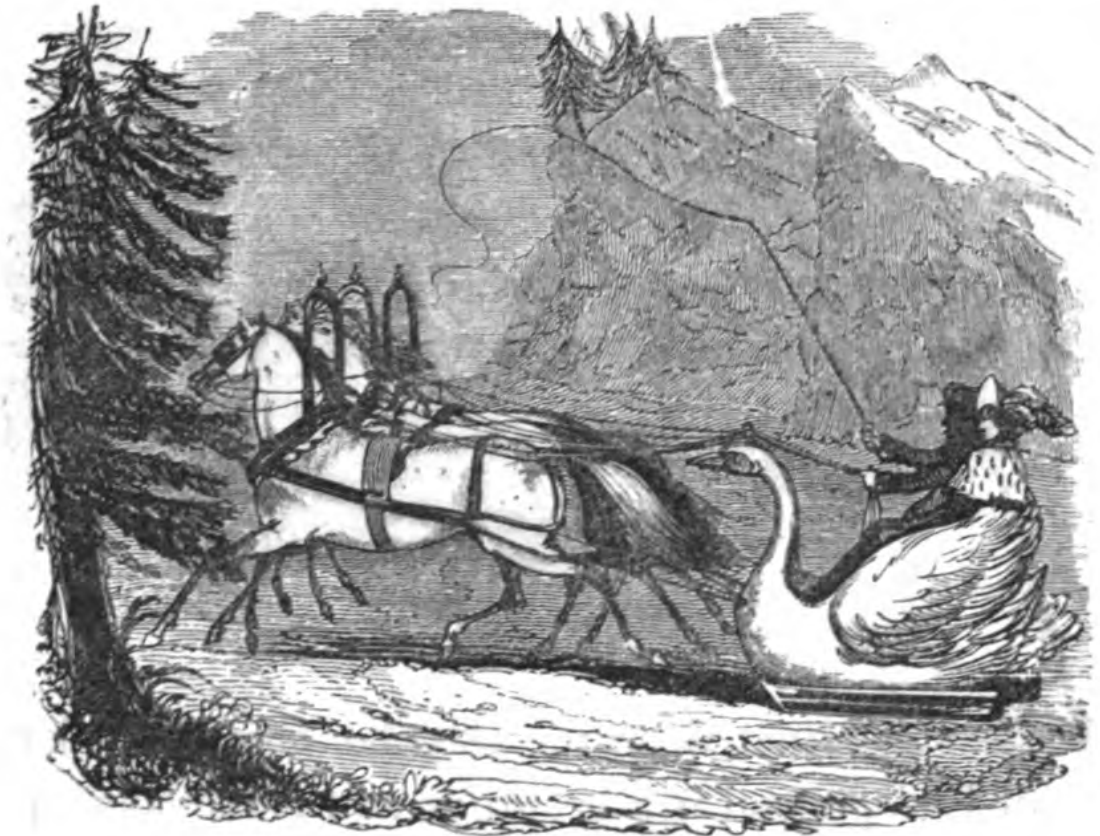
---

Which is the largest city in Germany? Describe Vienna.



The people of Vienna are very fond of amusements, and no city has a greater variety. In winter, when the Danube is frozen over, the ladies ride in beautiful little sleighs upon the ice. Some of the sleighs are in the shape of lions, some are like tigers, and some like swans and shells.

The ladies in them are dressed in furs, and wear splendid bonnets and jewels. Each sleigh is drawn by a horse or stag, ornamented with ribands and a great many little bells.



AUSTRIANS TRAVELLING IN A SLEIGH OR SLEDGE.

Near the city of Vienna is a beautiful park, almost four

---

Describe some of the winter amusements at Vienna.

miles long, which is called the Prater. In summer, many thousands of people go there for amusement. The scene is wonderful, and people enjoy it sitting under the trees drinking lemonade.

Here, a party is dancing; there, a group listening to music; here, are boys leading about monkeys dressed like soldiers, who march about and dance to the fiddle; there, are jugglers who fry pancakes in their hats; rope-dancers who sit, eat, drink, and dance on a rope in the air, and yet do not tumble off.



THE AVIARY IN THE PARK.

---

Describe the scene in the park near Vienna, during summer.

## CHAPTER XX.

## PARLEY TELLS ABOUT AUSTRIA.

AUSTRIA is a very large country, and contains twice as many inhabitants as the whole of the United States of North America. There are many large towns in Austria besides Vienna, but I cannot tell you about them now.

The people of Austria are some of them very idle, and some of them are very industrious. They are ingenious, and manufacture a great many clocks and watches. They also make a variety of curious toys for children.

Jenkins and I saw a very curious machine, which represented a little village, in which the men and women were about two inches long. Some of the little men and women were walking, and some were riding, some were at work, and some were dancing. There was also a company of little soldiers marching about, and the little drummer thumped his drum, as if he would beat it to pieces.

---

How many inhabitants are there in Austria ?

Describe the people of Austria.

What articles do they make a great many of ?

You have heard of the mechanical chess-player. It is a great curiosity, and was invented in Austria; it is a figure like a man, dressed in the fashion of a Turk.

He is sitting at a table with a chess-board before him, and he plays the game of chess so well, that very few persons can beat him. This wonderful machine has been carried to all the great cities of Europe and America. It has everywhere excited astonishment.

I suppose you have heard about Gipsies. They somewhat resemble the American Indians in their complexion. They are a wandering race, and are to be found in most parts of Europe.

There are a few of them in England, many in Spain, and still more in Austria. They do not live together in villages, like other people, but rove from place to place, taking their families with them. They are great thieves, and pretend to tell fortunes.

Jenkins and I saw a good many of these gipsies in Austria. One night, as we were travelling in an extensive forest, we lost our way. At length we saw a fire at some distance through the woods. We went towards the place, and found about twenty gipsies there.

We told them we had lost our way, and requested some

---

Describe the mechanical chess-player. Describe the Gipsies.



food, and permission to stay with them till morning ; our request was granted. They gave us a supper of ham and black bread, with some wine, which is as plentiful in Austria, as cider, or beer, is in England. We then went to sleep in one of the tents.

In the night I was waked by the noise of some one in the tent ; I looked around and saw one of the gipsies stooping over Jenkins, who was asleep, and taking his purse from his pocket : I sprang toward the fellow, but he suddenly turned about and fled.

I now waked Jenkins, who felt in his pocket, and found that his purse, containing about forty dollars, had been stolen. We waited anxiously till morning. We then told the gipsies of the robbery ; they laughed at us, and told us, if we wished to keep our money, we must keep better company.

“Well,” thought I, “this is a lesson that I shall not soon forget. However pleasant, and seemingly safe it may be, we are sure to get no good from bad company.”

---

What happened to Parley and Jenkins among the gipsies?



CHAPTER XXI.

PARLEY TELLS ABOUT TURKEY.



THE SULTAN OF TURKEY.

**TURKEY** is an extensive country, and it lies by the side

of Austria. Jenkins and I did not go there: for the Turks are cruel, and we thought it dangerous to travel among them. The Turks do not believe in the Bible as we do. They have a book called the Koran, written by a man whose name was Mahomet.



A TURK SPLENDIDLY DRESSED, SMOKING.

In this book there are a great many falsehoods, which the Turks believe to be all true. Among other things,

---

Where is Turkey?

What book do the Turks believe?

Mahomet pretended that he was one night carried up into heaven, where he saw very wonderful sights. Is it not strange that the Turks should believe such nonsense?

The largest town in Turkey, is Constantinople, and it is one of the largest cities in the world. The king of Turkey is called the Sultan. He has a great many wives, who are called Sultanas. The present Sultan is Abdul Medjid. The men in Turkey wear long beards. They are very fond of smoking, and sometimes their pipes are six feet long.

The people of Turkey do not sit in chairs, but sit cross-legged on the floor. They do not use knives and forks, but one person cuts up the food for all the company, and they take it in their fingers. They do not wear hats, but turbans.

The language spoken by the Turks is different from that of any other nation in Europe.

---

Which is the largest town in Turkey?

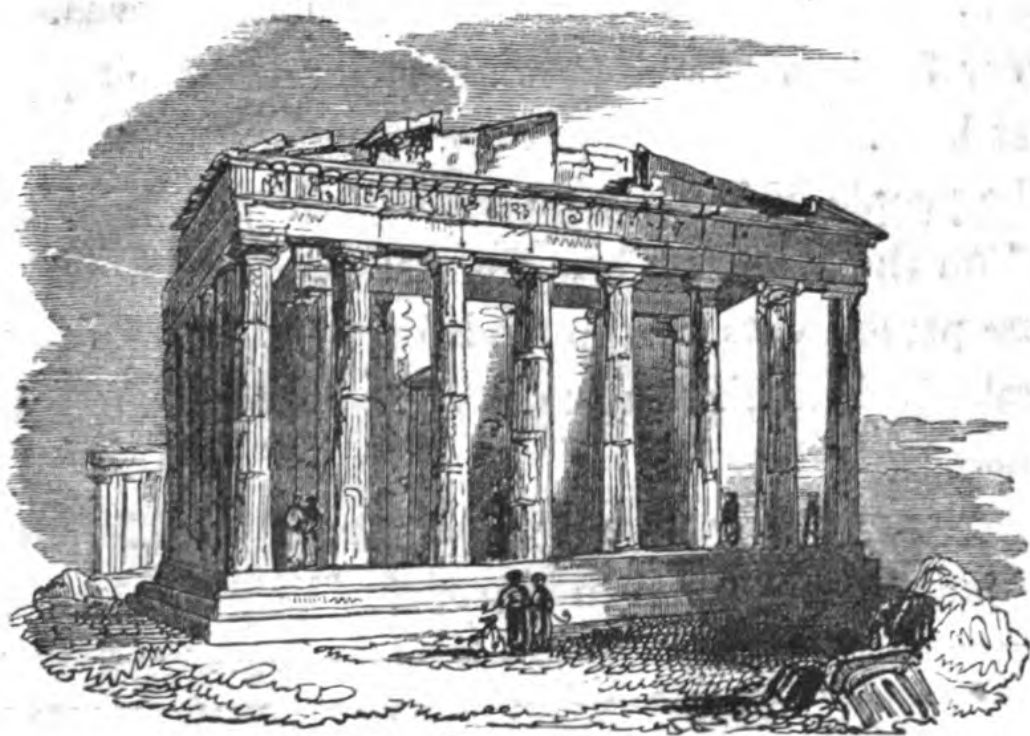
What is the king of Turkey called?

Can you tell some of the customs of the Turks?

What language do the Turks use? What is a part of Turkey called? Are the Greeks Christians or Mahometans? Why Greece an interesting country? How have the Turks treated the Greeks?

To the south of Turkey is the country called Greece. The people of Greece are called Greeks, and believe in the Bible: those who believe in the Bible are called Christians. The Turks hate Christians, and they have always been very cruel to the poor Greeks whom they long ruled over.\*

Greece is a very interesting country, not only because



THE PARTHENON, OR TEMPLE OF MINERVA.

it is beautiful, but because a famous nation once flourished there. If you were to travel in Greece, you would see the

---

\* Peter Parley's History of Greece is a very interesting work.









remains of cities, and edifices, which were built three thousand years since.

There is still standing, near Athens, a celebrated town in Greece, a building that was erected as far back as the time I have mentioned. It is a noble edifice, though it is partly in ruins now. It is called the Parthenon, or Temple of Minerva.

The history of the ancient Greeks, who lived so long ago, and who made these splendid buildings, you will find very interesting. They were a very lively and brave people, and they performed many noble actions.

There was once a great king of Persia, who came with a vast army to conquer the ancient Greeks. The name of this king was Xerxes.

The Greeks fought like lions, and Xerxes was so much astonished at their bravery, that he declared it impossible to conquer them; and fled back to his own country with his army.

There are many other interesting stories of the ancient Greeks, but I can only tell you one more. There once lived in Greece two young men—their names were Damon and Pythias. They loved each other fondly.

---

What king was it that came against the Greeks with a large army? What effect had the bravery of the Greeks on Xerxes.

At length, Damon was seized by one of the kings, put in prison, and sentenced to death. Damon said to the king, "I pray thee, let me go and see my wife and children before I die. I will then return and deliver myself up to death."

But the king refused to let Damon go, until Pythias, his friend, offered to take his place, and stay in the prison while Damon should go and see his family. Damon went accordingly. His wife and children lived at a great distance.

He told them he had come to see them for the last time; they wept bitterly, and clung about his neck, and would not let him go. "Farewell," said he, springing from them, "I must return to my prison: if I am not there at the appointed hour, my friend Pythias will have to die in my place."

Damon now hastened back, with all his speed; but the hour for his return was at hand, and he had not arrived at the prison. The king did not believe he would return; so he commanded Pythias to be led forth and executed in his stead.

Pythias was therefore taken from the prison and carried into an open field; here he was placed upon a scaffold, with thousands of people round to see him die. At this moment,

---

Can you tell the story of Damon and Pythias?

a cry was heard among the crowd, and some one exclaimed, "Let me pass! let me pass!"

It was Damon! he forced his way among the people, and rushed upon the scaffold; he put his arms around the neck of Pythias, and exclaimed, "I have come, I have come: you are safe, and I am ready to die."

The king was struck with admiration at the conduct of the two friends. "Damon," said he, "you shall not die. You and your friend Pythias are free. Go, and let the example of your friendship be followed by others."

The ancient Greeks, after having flourished for more than a thousand years, were at length conquered by the Romans, and sunk into insignificance as a nation. This took place about two thousand years ago.

At length, after several centuries, Greece was conquered by the Turks; and since that time, for several hundred years, the people were in a state of slavery. Some years since, however, the oppression and cruelty of the Turks roused the Greeks to resistance, and they have since been

---

How long did the ancient Greeks flourish? By whom were they conquered? How long since this took place?

By whom was Greece again conquered? What has been the state of the Greeks since they were conquered by the Turks? What roused the Greeks to resist the Turks? Are they now free?

struggling to regain their liberty. They fought bravely and suffered much, and they are now freed from their Turkish masters.



A TURK AND A GREEK FIGHTING.



# ITALY.

50 100  
English Miles.





## CHAPTER XXII.

## PARLEY GOES TO ITALY.

I set out with Jenkins for Italy, after having been a month at Vienna. People say that Italy is in the shape of a boot, and so it is, as you will see by looking at the map. Nothing remarkable happened on our journey to Rome.



THE CITY OF ROME.

Rome is the most celebrated city in Italy. The high

---

Which is the most celebrated place in Italy?

building which you see in the picture is one of the largest and most celebrated churches in the world ; it is called St. Peter's. When I was in Rome, I saw an old man, called the Pope ; he lives in a fine palace, and is a sort of king.

There are a great many people called Roman Catholics, or Papists, who think the Pope can do nothing but what is right : but I assure you, some of the Popes who have lived in Rome, have been very wicked men. Rome, and other parts of Italy, are very remarkable for the remains of ancient buildings, which still exist there.

About two thousand years ago, Italy was inhabited by one of the most remarkable nations that ever existed. A building called the Coliseum still exists in Rome ; it was built almost two thousand years since. It was a sort of theatre, and was capable of containing a great many thousand people.

The ancient Romans were very rich, powerful, and warlike. They ruled over almost all the world. Nothing could exceed the beauty and magnificence of some of their cities and palaces.

---

What can you say of the Pope? What are Rome, and other parts of Italy, remarkable for? Describe the Coliseum.

Describe the ancient Romans. What is said of the cities and palaces of ancient Rome? What famous town is mentioned in Italy?

There is a famous city in Italy, called Naples. It is beautifully situated, but I cannot describe it to you now. I wish, however, you would look on the map of Italy, and see where it is.



VIEW OF NAPLES.

Near this city is a volcano, or a burning mountain, called Vesuvius, which casts out at its top, fire, smoke, and melted stones, called lava. It sometimes makes a noise more dreadful than thunder.

About eighteen hundred years ago, this volcano sent

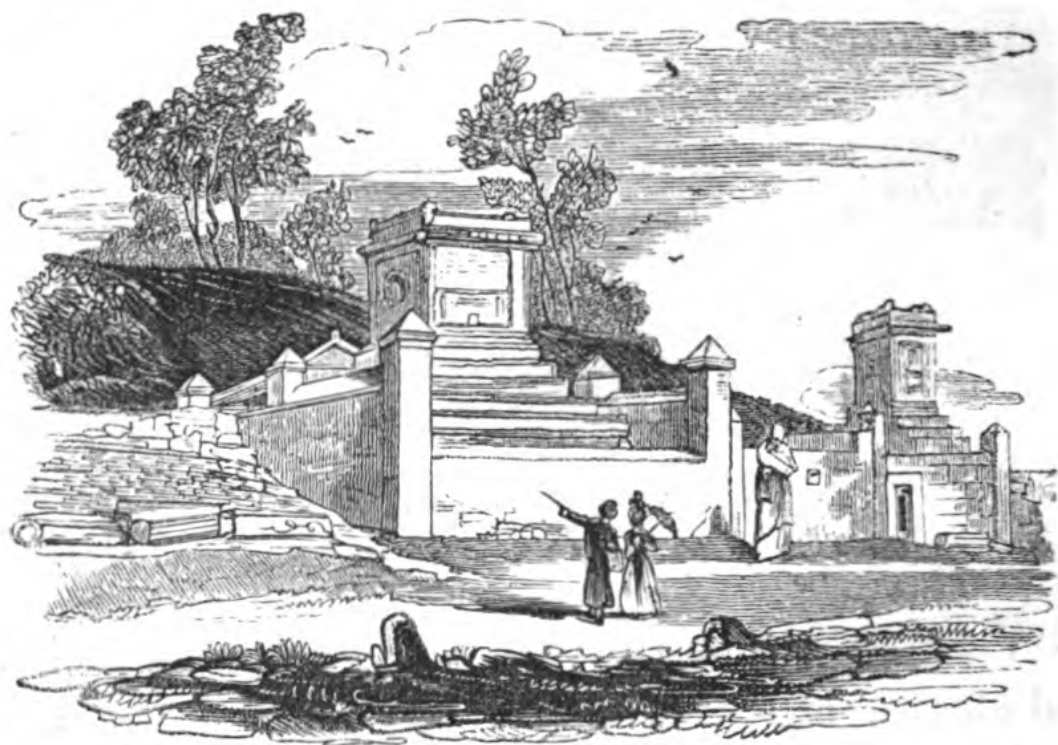
---

What volcano is near Naples? Describe the volcano. What occurred at this volcano about eighteen hundred years ago?



forth an immense mass of melted stones and ashes, which ran down the sides of the mountain, and buried several cities and villages in ruins.

Among the rest, Herculaneum was destroyed, and the small town of Pompeii. The lava which covered this latter place has been lately removed ; and the houses and streets of the town are exhibited to view, as when first overwhelmed, eighteen hundred years ago. Here is a picture of Pompeii, as it now appears.



VIEW OF THE REMAINS OF POMPEII.

I can tell you but little more about the ancient Romans

---

What is said of Pompeii ?

now. When you are older, you will read the history of that wonderful people. I have only time to say that, more than a thousand years ago, their immense empire fell, never again to be restored.

It flourished for more than twelve hundred years, having been, by far the mightiest power that existed in ancient times. Nothing now remains but its history, and the vast ruins which tell of its former grandeur !

The present inhabitants of Italy are very different from their ancestors, the ancient Romans. They inhabit the same country, and live among memorials of the wealth and power of their forefathers ; but these are disregarded. The modern Italians are weak, poor, and superstitious.

---

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### PARLEY LEAVES ITALY AND VISITS SWITZERLAND.

I PARTED with Jenkins at Rome. He went to Naples, to embark for America, and I set out for Switzerland. As I passed along through the country of Italy the inhabi-

---

How long is it since the Roman empire fell ? How long did it flourish ? What is the character of the modern Italians ?

tants were gathering their grapes. Of the juice of grapes they make wine ; and grapes, when dried, become raisins.



ITALIAN VINEYARDS.

At length I arrived at the Alps. These are the most famous mountains in the world. Their tops are always covered with snow.

I had a singular adventure in these mountains. As I was travelling through the woods, about sunset, I was suddenly surrounded by a dozen men, with swords, pistols,

---

What were the people of Italy doing, when Parley passed through their country?

What are the most famous mountains in the world ?

and long knives. They spoke to me in Italian, but I did not understand them.

They then seized me, and hurried me along through the woods ; and at length we came to the ruins of an old castle. The men dragged me along through a dark passage, till we reached a large room under ground.

Here we remained some time. I could not understand a word that these men said ; but I had reason to suppose that they wanted to rob me of my money, and meant to do me some harm. I had a pair of small pistols about me, which I intended to use in case of need.

By and by, a man came into the room, whom I thought I had seen before, but I was not certain. He seemed to be the captain of the band. Some of the men spoke to him about me. When he saw me he started, and I was astonished to discover that it was Leo, whom we had saved from the wreck !

Leo, though he had become a robber, was not ungrateful. He told the men I had once saved his life ; and assured me, that in the morning I should proceed in safety on my journey.

Accordingly, in the morning, Leo went with me to the road, gave me his good wishes, and bade me adieu. I

---

What adventure did Parley meet with in the Alps?



would have warned him against the wickedness of his present pursuit, but he gave me no time to do so. In a short time I arrived at Berne, the capital of Switzerland.

The inhabitants of Switzerland live among wild mountains; but they are amiable, honest, and sincere. Their principal towns are Berne, Geneva, and Lausanne. They have no king, but are governed somewhat like the people in the United States of America.

The Swiss have always been fond of liberty. Many years ago, they were subject to the power of Austria. William Tell, and several other brave persons, resolved to free their country.

The Austrian governor, named Gesler, suspected this design; and, in order to ascertain the truth, he placed a cap on a pole, and commanded all the people to bow down before it. But William Tell refused to do so. Gesler then caused him to be seized and put in prison.

Tell was very skilful in the use of the bow and arrow. Gesler wished to see some proof of his skill; so he commanded an apple to be placed on the head of a beautiful little boy, Tell's son, and required Tell to shoot at it. Tell was very much afraid that if he shot at the apple, he

---

Which is the capital of Switzerland? What is the character of the Swiss? Which are the principal towns in Switzerland?



should hit his dear boy ; but Gesler told him that he and his son should be put to death, if he did not shoot at the apple.



TELL SHOOTING THE APPLE FROM HIS SON'S HEAD.

Tell then discharged his bow : the arrow struck the apple through the centre, and did not touch the boy.

Some time after this, Gesler was removing Tell from one prison to another. While they were crossing a lake, a violent storm arose, and Gesler was afraid of being drowned. In this danger, he gave the direction of the boat

---

Will you tell me the story of William Tell?

to Tell. Tell steered the boat to a rock, sprang ashore, and escaped to the mountains.

He now called the people together, and they went in pursuit of Gesler. At length they found him, and Tell killed him with his own hand. The people then drove the Austrians out of the country, and thus secured the freedom of Switzerland.

It is often the case that the welfare of a whole country depends on the conduct of one person. A good man, in favourable circumstances, may add to a kingdom's prosperity, and a bad man may bring about its utter ruin.

---

## CHAPTER XXIV.

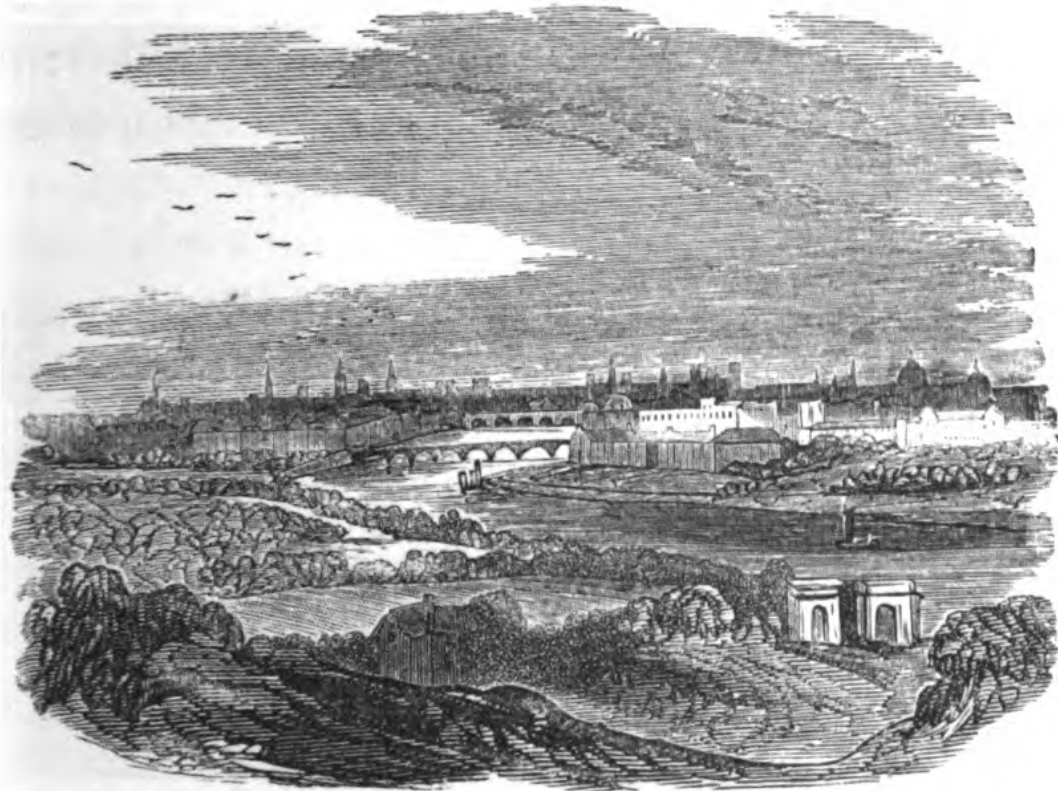
### PARLEY TELLS ABOUT FRANCE.

HAVING remained a short time in Switzerland, I set out for France; and in two or three weeks I arrived at Paris.

This city contains half as many inhabitants as London, and is, by far, the pleasantest city in Europe. The people are very gay, and Paris abounds in amusements.

In one part of the city is a grove called the Elysian

Fields. Here there are people riding, walking, dancing, and sitting. It is a delightful place, and the people seem very happy.



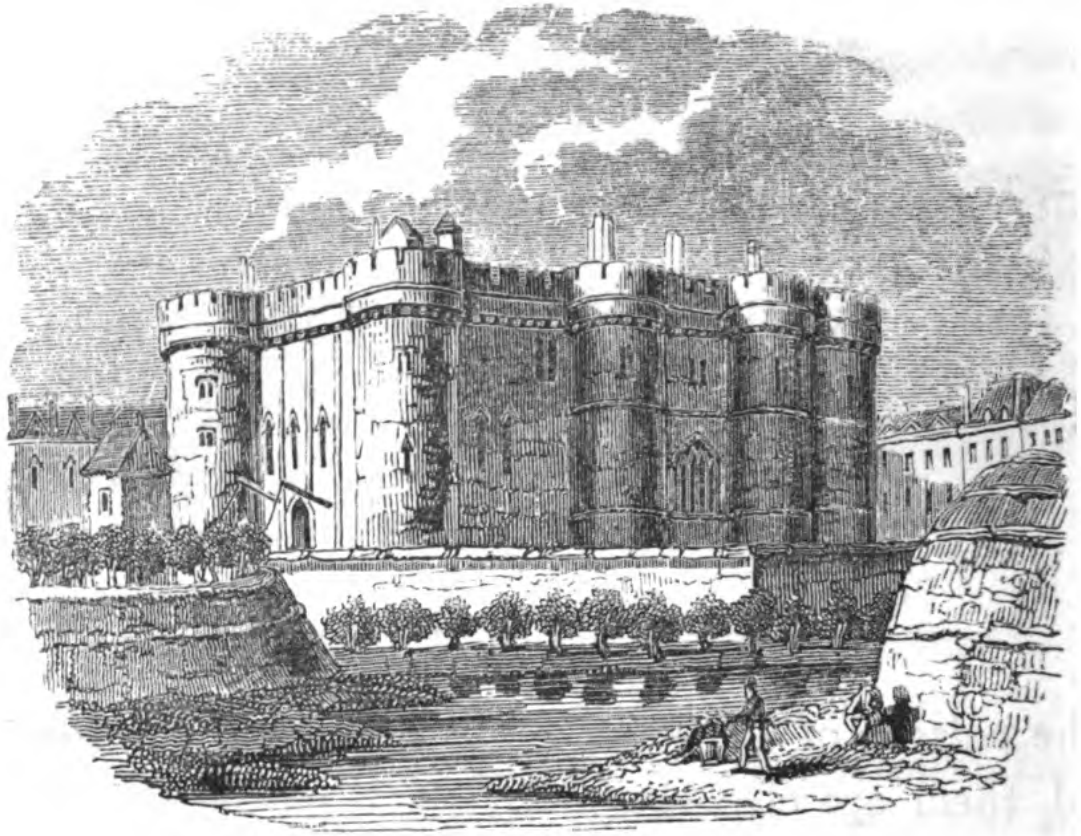
VIEW OF PARIS.

The palaces of Paris are very large, and the gardens around them are charming. In these gardens there are a great many people to be seen ; gentlemen and ladies are walking, and hundreds of children are scampering about.

France is a large and fine country ; the people are gay,

and polite. There are more than twice as many inhabitants in France as in the United States of America.

There was once a famous prison in Paris, called the Bastile. In this prison the kings used to shut up those they disliked. Some of these persons were killed; some of them were confined in dark rooms, never again to see the light; and a few were again set at liberty.



THE BASTILE AS IT APPEARED IN 1789.

---

Where is Paris? How many people does it contain? Describe the country of France? What is the character of the people? How many inhabitants in France?



There was once a young man put in the Bastile, and kept there for many years ; when he was grown old and grey, he was set free. On going abroad, he found that all his friends were dead, and all his acquaintances were gone—he knew no one, and no one knew him. At length, he returned to the prison, and begged to be again confined in his dungeon. “The world,” said he, “is changed, I am forgotten, and here in darkness let me die.”

About sixty years ago, the people of France, having become enraged against their king, Louis the Sixteenth, rose, and pulled the Bastile to the ground. Three years after this, they went to the palace of the king, and threatened to tear him in pieces. By and by, they took him, and severed his head from his body. They then proceeded against the queen, and killed her in the same manner. They killed, also, thousands of other people. This was called the French Revolution.

At length, a wonderful man appeared in France ; this was Napoleon Bonaparte, of whom I have spoken before—one of the greatest warriors that the world ever saw. He was born about eighty years ago, on an island in the Mediterranean Sea, called Corsica.

He was at first a lieutenant in the French army, but by

---

What can you tell me about the Bastile?

What did the French do with their king, Louis the Sixteenth?



degrees, he became a general. At the age of twenty-six years, having fought many battles, and obtained many victories, he conquered the whole of Italy.

After this, he went back to France; when the people, as I before told you, having killed their king, made him emperor. Thus Bonaparte, who was a few years before, a poor soldier, was now a mighty emperor, and lived in a palace, surrounded by wealth and magnificence!

But he was not contented; he wanted more power, and so he made war on other nations. For a long time he was successful. The most powerful kingdoms were conquered by his armies, and the proudest kings were humbled at his feet.

The world looked on with wonder and fear; and Bonaparte, intoxicated with success, foolishly imagined that a turn of fortune could never come. But in this he was mistaken.

You recollect what I told you of his expedition to Russia. In an attempt to overthrow that kingdom, he failed, and his army was almost wholly lost. In vain did he try to recover his power. The nations of Europe came with their armies against him.

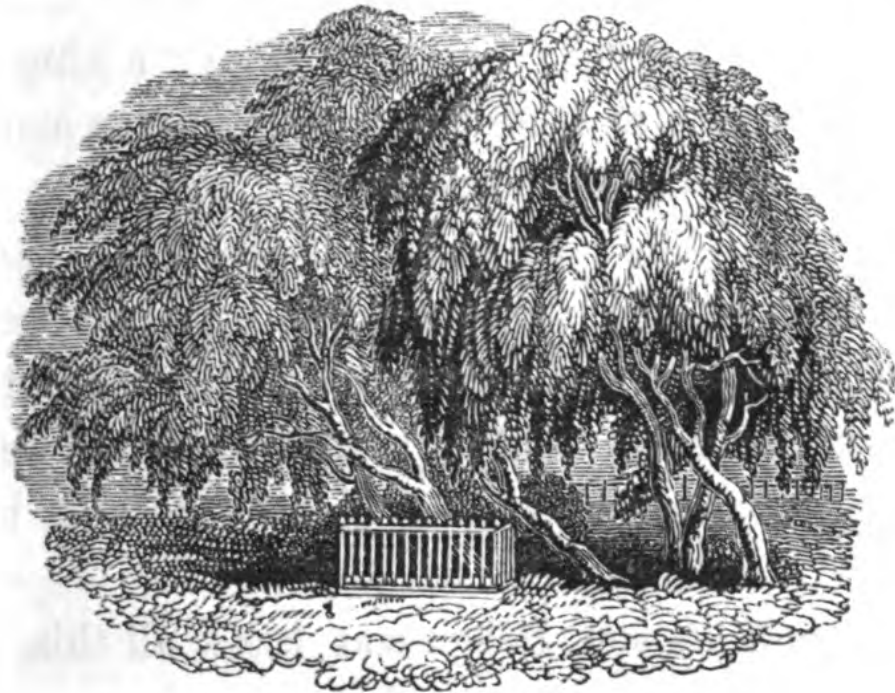
---

How long is it since Bonaparte was born?

Where was Bonaparte born? Relate his history.

He made prodigious efforts, and struggled, like a lion, to stand his ground ; but it was without success. He fled from France ; and, now an exile, he sought protection on board an English ship. He was taken, and carried far away upon the sea, to a lonely island, called St. Helena.

After living on this island a few years, Bonaparte died, in the year 1821, and was buried there. Though a man of amazing abilities, he was a fearful instance of the folly



BONAPARTE'S TOMB AT ST. HELENA.

and wickedness of undue ambition ; and was, undoubtedly, far less happy than many humbler persons, who live less

---

When and where did Bonaparte die?

brilliant, but more useful and virtuous lives. Napoleon, the nephew of Bonaparte, is now Emperor of the French. What changes there are in this world !

I never think of Bonaparte entering the capitals of other countries as a conqueror, and then dying as a prisoner on the lonely rock of St. Helena, without calling to mind the pride of Nebuchadnezzar and Belshazzar, mentioned by the prophet Daniel.

You remember that Nebuchadnezzar was a mighty king of Babylon. It pleased God to give him "a kingdom, and majesty, and glory, and honour. And for the majesty that he gave him, all people, nations, and languages, trembled and feared before him ; whom he would, he slew, and whom he would, he kept alive ; and whom he would, he set up, and whom he would, he put down. But when his heart was lifted up, and his mind hardened in pride, he was deposed from his kingly throne, and they took his glory from him."

And though his son Belshazzar knew all this, when he came to the throne, he humbled not his heart, but lifted up himself against the Lord of heaven, so that when he was drinking with his princes, his lords, his wives, and his concubines, and praising the gods of gold, and of silver, of brass, of iron, of wood, and of stone, the hand-writing of the Eternal blazed against his palace wall ; his days were

numbered, he was weighed in the balances, and found wanting, and his kingdom was to be divided among his enemies. "In that night was Belshazzar, the king of the Chaldeans slain."

Well it would be if every king under heaven would read the account of these mighty men frequently.

But while I thus speak of kings, let me remind you, that the lowliest among us is liable to the sin of pride, and that pride will not go unpunished, whether it reign in the breast of a poor man, or in the heart of an emperor.

Having spent two months in Paris, I went to Havre, and there I embarked for America, on board the ship, Washington. In this vessel I found an old acquaintance, who had been to Spain and Portugal. As I have not told you about these countries, I will now relate to you what information I gained from my friend respecting them.

## CHAPTER XXV.

## PARLEY TELLS ABOUT SPAIN AND PORTUGAL.

THE largest town in Spain is Madrid. There are not so many people in Spain as in the United States of America. The inhabitants are grave, indolent, and honest, but I am sorry to say that they are sometimes revengeful. The practice of smoking cigars is exceedingly prevalent among them. A traveller in Spain says, "It is as common to see smoke come out of a Spaniard's mouth as out of a chimney."

Between two and three hundred years ago, the King of Spain fitted out a great fleet called the "Invincible Armada," to invade England. Well was it for the latter country that it did not succeed.

The people of Spain are very fond of bull-fights. You will like to hear about a bull-fight. I will tell you the manner of it in as plain a way as I can.

---

Which is the capital of Spain? How many people are there in Spain? What is their character? What are the Spaniards very fond of?



When the grandees and great folks have taken their seats, and thousands of other people are collected to see the sight in the amphitheatre erected for the purpose, the door is drawn up, and a furious bull rushes forward into the arena.



A SPANISH BULL-FIGHT.

The bull is met by a man on horseback, holding a long lance. This man is called a Picador. He generally succeeds in wounding the bull. If he happens to be thrown down, and his horse gored by the bull, men run forward with

pieces of coloured cloths, and darts, to draw off the attention of the bull from the fallen man. They tease and baffle the enraged animal with the pieces of coloured cloth, and wound him with their darts. These men are called Chulos.

When the bull is nearly spent with exertion and wounds, all the men leave the arena, and another man, called the Matador, makes his appearance. In one hand he waves a flag, in the other he holds a dagger, and this, after a while, he suddenly plunges into the bull's neck, between the horns. A cord is then thrown around the horns of the fallen, bleeding bull, and he is dragged away by several horses at full gallop.

This is a cruel sport, but, as I told you, the Spaniards like it. I would advise you always to act mercifully and kindly to the brute creation, for the Spanish bull-fights are a reproach to Spain. I have now told you enough about the matter.

The largest town in Portugal is Lisbon. It is nearly twice as large as New York.

The people of Portugal are very much like the people of Spain. The country produces very fine fruit; wine,

---

Which is the largest town in Portugal? How large is Lisbon?  
What is the character of the Portuguese? What fruit is brought from Portugal?

grapes, and oranges, are brought from Portugal to this country.



PORTUGUESE WOMEN GATHERING GRAPES.

About eighty years ago, there was an earthquake in Europe, which shook many of the countries. It was so violent in Lisbon, that the houses were shaken to pieces, and whole streets fell in ruins to the ground. Many hundreds of the people were killed, and a great part of the city was destroyed.

---

What event occurred in Europe about eighty years ago?

What were some of the effects of this earthquake in Lisbon?

When we hear of the hurricanes and earthquakes of other countries, how seldom do we feel thankful in being free from them !

I have now told you of all the principal countries of Europe. I hope you are not tired of my long stories. If you still like Peter Parley's Tales, I intend to tell you about Asia, Africa, and America.

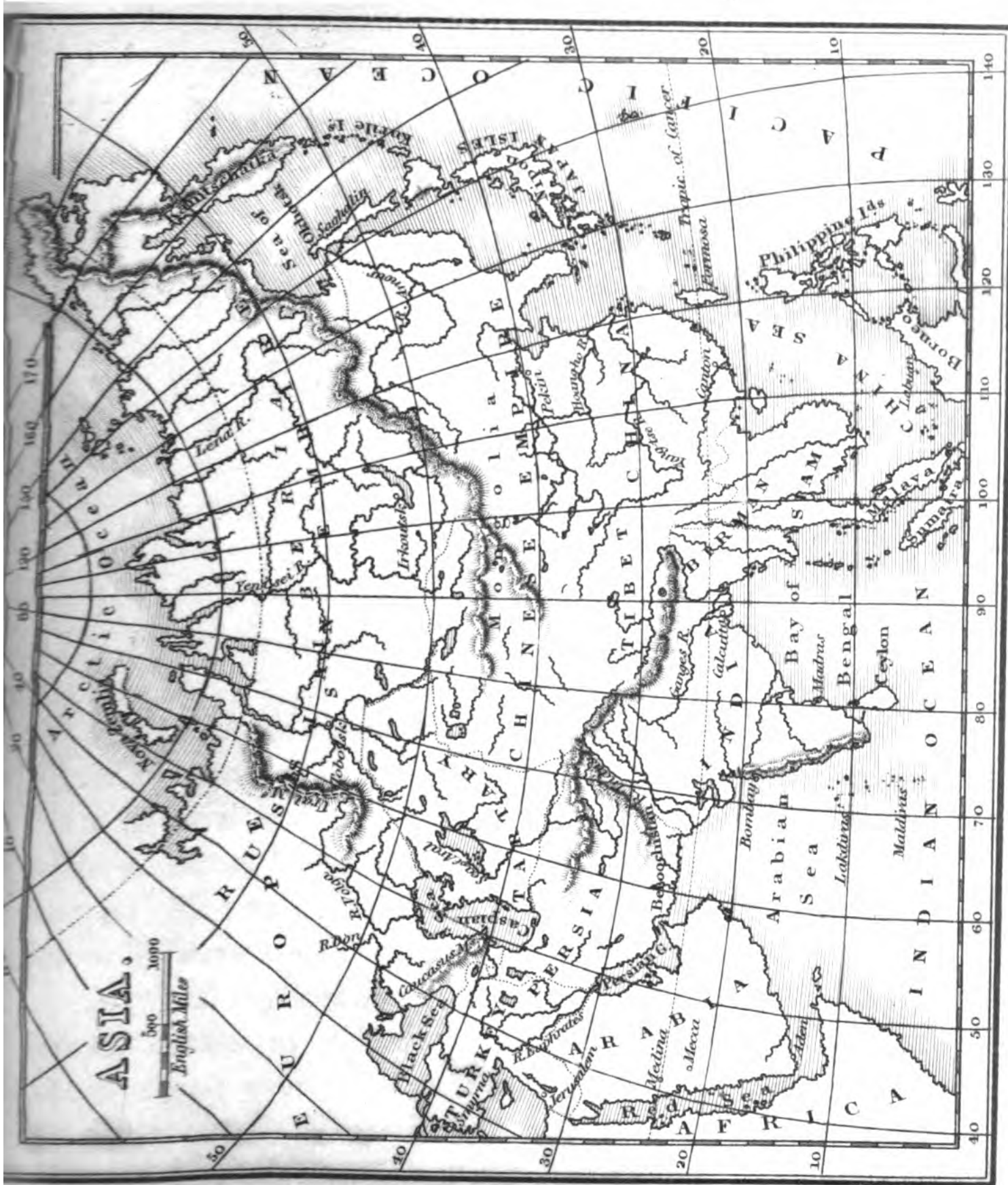
PETER PARLEY'S  
TALES ABOUT ASIA.



PETER PARLEY WARMLY WELCOMED.









PETER PARLEY'S  
TALES ABOUT ASIA.



CHAPTER I.

STORY OF A TIGER AND CROCODILE.

“ HERE comes old Peter Parley again ! ”

Yes, here I am, alive and well, but I am more lame than I was last year. I used to get along comfortably with a cane, but in the winter I slipped down upon the ice, as I was going across Boston Common, and, ever since, I have been obliged to go about with a crutch.

But, if my legs are stiff, my tongue is free ; and, as I cannot walk as well as formerly, I love to tell stories better than ever. Before I begin, however, according to my old custom, I must ask you to look at the map, from

the Arctic to the Indian Ocean, and from Turkey to Japan. You see it is the map of Asia. I will now tell you about a Tiger and a Crocodile.

But I must describe these animals, for perhaps you have never seen either of them. The tiger is a wild, cruel animal, shaped like a cat, but much larger than the largest dog.

A crocodile is a large ugly creature, with a very wide mouth, a long tail, and a hard shell-like covering over his body. It lives in rivers, and can sink to the bottom, or rise to the top, with great ease. It is very swift in the water, but on the land it crawls about with great difficulty.

Now, there was once a ship sailing along by the mouth of a river. The people in the ship were in want of fresh water, for you know the water of the sea is salt, and cannot be drunk. So some of the people in the ship went ashore to get fresh water.

One of the men wandered from the rest, and went to a considerable distance along the bank of the river. By and by, he came to a beautiful place, and sat down to rest himself. The trees and bushes were loaded with ripe fruit, and fragrant flowers. There were a multitude of

---

Describe a tiger. Describe a crocodile.



birds with bright plumage in the air, and in the woods; they were singing their merry songs, and sporting amid the branches of the trees.

It was indeed a delightful spot; and, the weather being warm, the wanderer remained some time beneath the cool shade of the trees, looking with pleasure upon the beautiful scene. He was sitting upon the grass close by the river. By and by he thought he heard a slight noise in the water. He turned round, and could distinctly see a large crocodile, just beneath the surface of the clear wave. The huge animal was already close to him, and the man could see his projecting eyeballs fixed upon him.

Scarcely had he time to spring to his feet, before the open jaws of the crocodile were raised above the water, ready to receive their prey. The man instantly leaped upon a rock that was near him, when a new and more startling danger presented itself. Directly before him, a huge tiger lay crouched in the thicket. The eye of the animal was fixed on the man, and, as if sure of his victim, he was waving his tail triumphantly in the air.

For a single instant, the sailor looked in speechless amazement upon the tiger; then, with a sudden leap, he sprang aside, in the faint hope of escape. With the agility of a cat, the tiger bounded from his lurking place. His eyes flashing, and his claws expanded, he rushed

toward his intended victim, uttering, at the same moment, a terrible growl.



THE TIGER AND CROCODILE.

But he missed his aim. The man had passed a little beyond his reach, and the tiger, leaping nearly over his head, plunged, like a thunderbolt, into the very jaws of the crocodile.

The two monsters now closed with each other in deadly struggle. The crocodile drew the tiger into the water, and here the conflict was terrible. Each striving for victory, they alternately rose and sank in the river. The waves

bubbled and swelled around them, and the water to a considerable distance was stained with blood. At length the tiger rose to the surface, apparently exhausted, and, uttering a thrilling yell, he sank in the stream. The water settled quietly over him, and no more was seen of these fearful monsters.

The sailor, who had witnessed this scene, paused a moment, and fell upon his knees, to thank Heaven for his remarkable deliverance. He then returned to his companions, and told them this strange story.

Now, where do you think this affair happened, if it happened at all? Not in America, for there are no tigers nor crocodiles in America. Not in Europe, for there are none of these animals there. Not in Africa, for there are no real tigers there; the African tiger is the panther. It must therefore have been in Asia.

In this part of the world there are also wild boars, which are very savage and ferocious creatures. I knew a gentleman who was travelling in India for the purpose of taking views of the most beautiful parts of the country.

---

Are there any tigers or crocodiles in America?

Are there any in Europe?

Are there any real tigers in Africa?

Where are tigers found?

While he was busily employed in this manner, he one day heard a noise very near him, and, turning round, he saw one of these fierce animals among some very tall rushes, just ready to attack him. My friend fortunately had a fowling-piece, with which he fired at the boar, and killed it. I saw the painting, which he afterwards finished, with the addition of his own picture, and that of the wild boar just ready to rush upon him.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### PARLEY TELLS ABOUT THE COUNTRIES AND PEOPLE OF ASIA.

BUT where is Asia? That is what I am going to tell you. The world, you know is round, and Asia is on the eastern side of it. If you will take an apple, and stick a pin in one side of it, then turn it over, and stick a pin in the other side of it, one of these pins will represent Asia, and the other America.

Now Asia is an immense country. It is larger than



either Europe, Africa, or America. It has as many people in it as all the rest of the world put together. It is the country in which Adam and Eve dwelt, in the garden of Eden. Moses, David, Solomon, and our Saviour lived there. Asia is, in fact, one of the most remarkable and interesting portions of the earth.

You had better look at the map of Asia. The top of the map is north, the right hand east, the bottom part south, and the left hand west. Now this great division of the world is separated, as you will see on the map, into thirteen different countries.

In the northern part is Siberia, a cold and desolate country, inhabited, for the most part, by people of low stature, who dress in furs in winter, live in small cabins, and use reindeer for drawing their sledges.

To the south of Siberia is the Chinese Empire. This consists of China, whence we get tea, and silk goods ; and several nations of Tartars. The Tartars are a wandering people, who live in tents, possess large flocks of cattle, and roam from place to place. They are excellent horsemen,

---

Into how many countries is Asia divided? In what part of Asia is Siberia? Describe the Siberians. In what part of Asia is China? Which way is China from Hindoostan? From Independent Tartary? From Siberia? What do we get from China? Describe the Tartars.



are fond of the chase and warlike exercises, and despise those people who live in settled habitations.



A TARTAR GOING TO THE CHASE.

China is the southern portion of the Chinese Empire. It is full of people, and is crossed in every direction by canals, upon which there are multitudes of boats, carrying goods to various parts of the kingdom. The Chinese are a very singular people, and I shall tell you more about them by and by.

A little to the east of China is a group of islands,

---

Describe China.

the largest of which is called Nippon. These islands constitute the empire of Japan. The Japanese are very ingenious, but they are so suspicious that they will not let Europeans come into their country. I shall tell you some curious things about them before I have done my story.



A CHINESE MANDARIN.

South of the Chinese empire, you will see a broad piece of land, extending into the ocean. This is called **Chin-India** or **Indo-China**. There are several nations here, the

---

Where are the Japan isles? In what direction are they from Persia? From China? From Hindoostan? Which is the largest of the Japan isles? What of the Japanese?

principal of which is the Birman nation. The people here ride about on elephants, as we do on horses. I shall also tell you about them before long.

At the extremity of Indo-China, you observe a narrow point of land, projecting, in a south-eastern direction, into the sea. This is a peninsula, and is called Malacca. The people here are a wild and inhuman race, and the country is infested by multitudes of tigers and crocodiles.

Now look on the map, and west of Indo-China you will see a country, which terminates in a sharp point. This is the country of the Hindoos, and is called Hindoostan. It is also often called India, and now belongs to the English. To this country many missionaries have been sent. I have no doubt, you have heard how these Hindoos sometimes drown their children, vainly imagining that, in so doing, they please their false gods.

I must here speak a word about the "Overland Passage," as it is called, from England to India. As a great trade is carried on between these places, so a quick way of going from the one to the other is a very desirable thing.

---

In what direction is Chin-India from Hindoostan? From the Japan isles? From Turkey? Arabia? What is the principal kingdom in Chin-India? What of the Burmese? In what direction is Malacca from Japan? Afghanistan? Siberia? Describe Malacca. What of the people? What of the wild animals?

Years back, ships, that is sailing vessels, and not steamers, for then the latter were not known, used sometimes to be as much as six months in performing the voyage, but now, a merchant, by proceeding to Alexandria, in Egypt, passing along the Mahmoudie Canal, sailing up the river Nile, and crossing the desert from Cairo to the Red Sea, may reach India in little more than six weeks. Even this short time, it is said, will be much shortened.

The "Overland Alphabet," a juvenile work on this subject, I recommend to the attention of my young readers.

Beloochistan comprises several different tribes of barbarous people, many of whom are robbers.

Afghanistan, or Cabul, which lies to the north of Beloochistan, is occupied by a nation who are fond of war and hunting.

Persia, lying to the west of Afghanistan, is inhabited by a people fond of poetry and fine horses; here are also

---

In what direction is Hindoostan from Arabia? Turkey? Independent Tartary? Japan? China?

What do the Hindoos sometimes do with their children?

In which direction is Beloochistan from Japan? What of the people of Beloochistan?

Which way is Afghanistan from Kamschatka? What of the Afghans?



groves of roses, and numbers of nightingales singing in them.



PERSIAN MAN AND WOMAN.

To the north of Persia is Independent Tartary, a country of lofty mountains, and inhabited by a nation of bold and daring robbers.

To the west of Independent Tartary is a great salt lake,

---

Which way is Persia from China? Japan? Turkey? What of the people of Persia?

Which way is Independent Tartary from China? Hindoostan? What of the country? Of the people?



called the Caspian Sea. On the western border of this lake are the Caucasian countries. The people here are remarkable for their beauty, particularly the Georgians and Caucasians. Many of the young women are carried to Turkey, and sold for slaves.



CAUCASIANS.

South-west of the Caucasian countries is Turkey. You will recollect there is a Turkey in Europe, also. The country of which I am now telling you is in Asia. It is

---

Which way is the Caspian Sea from Japan? Which way are the Caucasian countries from Chin-India? What of the people?

subject to the Sultan of Turkey, who resides at Constantinople. The people are chiefly Turks.

South of Turkey is Arabia. The people are a wandering race, living in tents, and subsisting chiefly by means of their flocks. They have a great many camels, and the most beautiful horses in the world. The milk of the camels forms a principal part of their food. These animals also are used to convey their tents in travelling. When they reach a spot which is convenient for a resting-place, they pitch their tents, and in a very short time it seems as if a village had sprung up among the sands of the desert. In Arabia, and Turkey in Asia, most of the events recorded in the Bible took place.

Thus I have told you about the divisions of Asia, and the principal nations and tribes inhabiting it. These nations have none of them white skins, like the Europeans, nor are any of them as black as Negroes. Many of them are as dark as the American Indians, and some of them are much darker. The women of Japan, and the Caucasian

---

Which way is Turkey from Persia? China?

To whom is Turkey in Asia subject? What of the people?

Which way is Arabia from Persia? China? Japan? What of the people? What animals have they?

What events have taken place in Arabia and Turkey?

women, are nearly as white as the women of England. None of them are Christians, except, perhaps, a very few, and these have an imperfect knowledge of Christianity.

This may seem but a melancholy picture, but the prospect will one day brighten. There are millions of pagans in the world, but there is a promise in the Word of God, that "the knowledge of the Lord shall cover the earth, as the waters cover the sea."

---

### CHAPTER III.

PARLEY TELLS HOW TO GO TO CHINA, AND HOW HE WENT THERE.

Now that you know something about Asia, I will tell you the way to go to it from England. You must get into a ship, and sail across the Atlantic Ocean, in a southerly direction. At the southern point of Africa is a cape,

---

What of the complexion of the people of Asia? Are any of the people of Asia Christians?

In what direction must you sail to go to Asia?

called the Cape of Good Hope. You will double this cape, as the sailors say; that is, you will pass round it, and enter the Indian Ocean. This is about three thousand miles wide. You will cross it in an easterly direction. By and by, you will come to many great islands; the names of some of which, I shall presently mention. Passing between these, and pursuing a northerly course, you will soon come to China.

I once crossed the Indian Ocean. I was going to China; and one day, as we were sailing in the ship Kien Long, we saw a very remarkable object before us in the sea. At first it appeared like the back of a great elephant, and then it appeared like a dark thunder cloud. As we came nearer, we discovered that it was an island, covered with mountainous peaks, so black and rugged, as to wear a truly frightful appearance. I was told that volcanoes once existed in these mountains, and earthquakes are still very common.

To the south-east of Asia are a great number of islands, some of which are very large. There are a great many

---

Where is the Cape of Good Hope? Which way is it from you?

What ocean do you cross between the Cape of Good Hope and China?

How far across the Indian Ocean?



inhabitants in them, and they produce many valuable articles of commerce, such as nutmegs, pepper, cloves, camphor, and other things. I passed between two of these islands; one was Sumatra and the other Java. I should like to tell you about these, and the other islands in the Pacific Ocean. Their story is very interesting, but I cannot tell it now. Perhaps I may tell you about them at some future time.

Well, as I was telling you, we sailed along in our ship, and entered the China Sea. Proceeding in a northerly course across this sea, we came, at length, to the mouth of a very large river. There were a multitude of islands, and we found it somewhat difficult to navigate our ship between them.

We came at length to Macao, which is situate on an island. It was built by the Portuguese, many years ago, and was once a place of great importance. But it is now a small town. We continued to sail up the river, which we found very broad, with a great many islands in it. By and by, we began to approach Canton. The banks of the

---

What lies to the south-east of Asia?

What can you tell of these islands?

What islands did Parley pass between? What sea did he cross?

Where is Macao? What can you tell of Macao?



river were beautifully cultivated; the plains, the slopes, and the very hills, which hung over the water, were covered with many kinds of fruit, grain, and vegetables. The whole landscape, on both sides of the river, seemed like a garden.



THE CITY OF CANTON.

The surface of the water was covered with a great number of boats of various forms and sizes. They were dif-

---

How did the land appear as Parley approached China ?

What does Parley say of the boats in the river of Canton ?

ferently fashioned from English boats. Most of them were painted with two eyes on the fore part, and ornamented with figures of beasts, birds, and serpents, on the stern, or hinder part.

The number of these boats was really countless. Some of them lay motionless on the water, others were moving forward with a slow and heavy progress, and others were rapidly shooting over the waves, like birds gliding in the air.

It was a strange, yet beautiful scene. The air was soft and balmy ; the shores were sprinkled over with houses ; the land was green with vegetation ; and the very bosom of the river was alive with men and women, pursuing their various employments.

At first it all seemed to me like a dream. The houses were unlike any I had seen before ; the modes of cultivating the lands, the plants, and the trees, were all singular. The fashion of the boats was strange ; the dress, complexion, and features of the people were all new.

There are few things more pleasant than the first sight of a strange land. I was indeed delighted with the scene. I stood upon the deck of the ship, quietly gazing upon the objects around me, when suddenly a loud cry burst from the boats near us ; this was followed by a crash, and screams

---

How does Parley describe the scene?

of distress. I looked over the side of the vessel, and discovered that our ship had upset one of the boats, with three men and two women in it. These people were immediately carried under the ship, and I supposed that they must certainly be drowned; but very soon they were all seen amid the agitated waves at the stern of the vessel, swimming like ducks, and tossing up and down like corks upon the billows. They were immediately taken up by the other boats, and not one was drowned.

We now arrived at Whampoa, which is about thirteen miles from Canton. Here our vessel stopped. All foreign ships are required to stop here, and are not permitted to go further up the river toward Canton. There their goods are taken out, and carried in boats to the city of Canton. Goods are also brought from the city, and put on board the vessels at this place.

---

What accident happened to one of the boats?

Where is Whampoa? What of foreign ships?

## CHAPTER IV.

## DESCRIPTION OF CANTON.

VERY soon after our arrival at Whampoa, I went in a boat to the city of Canton. This is, in many respects, one of the most remarkable cities in the world. The number of inhabitants is twice that of Liverpool, or New York.

The city is nearly square, and is surrounded by strong walls, within which no foreigner is allowed to enter. The streets are long and straight, and are chiefly paved with hewn stone. These streets are kept extremely neat; some of them are covered over with arched roofs. Here the shops are full of rich and beautiful goods.

The houses are of one story, and built of brick. They have no windows looking into the streets. The streets are always swarming with people, particularly with porters. There are no coaches, no carriages, and no trucks. All the burdens are carried about by the porters; even people, men and women, who are too rich or too lazy to go on foot, are carried in chairs by the porters.

---

How many inhabitants are there in Canton? Describe the city.

These porters have their heads, legs, and feet bare; their body is covered with a kind of short frock; and their



METHOD OF TRAVELLING IN CHINA.

hair, which is coarse, black, and more than a yard long, is braided, and hangs in a long queue down their backs.

The trade of Canton is immense. There are sometimes five thousand foreign ships at Whampoa. When lying together, their innumerable masts look like a forest of trees. These ships come from all parts of Europe and America. The Chinese have very little need of the manufactures or the productions of other countries: their own country is so

---

What of the trade of Canton?



fruitful, and they are so industrious, that they produce at home almost everything they want.

The foreign ships, therefore, bring to China little else besides silver money, opium, and a few other things. Attracted by the large sums of money brought to Canton, the people from all parts of the kingdom bring to this city immense quantities of goods.

These consist of tea, porcelain, a species of fine earthenware called china, nankins, silks, gold in bars, mother-of-pearl, and sugar. These goods are transported to Canton on the canals, which communicate with all parts of the empire. Immense numbers of boats, loaded with goods, may at all times be seen coming down the Canton river, which is navigable for three hundred miles, into a fruitful, and beautifully cultivated country.

No foreigners, as I have before said, were permitted to enter the city of Canton, when I was there. They were obliged to remain in the suburbs. Some English officers, who were staying in this part of China, were invited to a play, given in honour of them. This play they described as little better than the common shows in England ; though

---

What induces the Chinese to bring goods to Canton?

What are the principal articles furnished to foreign traders?

How are goods brought to Canton?

What of the suburbs of Canton?

they were informed that the Chinese had really good plays for their own amusement. They, however, consider themselves so superior to all other nations, that they thought this entertainment good enough, even for English gentlemen. The suburbs being very extensive, constitute of themselves a fine city. Here a great many Americans, and Englishmen, and other Europeans reside, for the purpose of superintending the trade carried on with their respective countries. There are also many silk manufactories here, several of which belong to foreigners.

About three miles from the city of Canton, there is a place called the Boat Town. This consists of about forty thousand boats, which cover the river, and form a kind of floating city. All these boats touch one another, and are ranged so as to form streets. The people who inhabit them have no other dwelling, and are prohibited by law from settling on the shore. Each boat lodges a family, including grandparents and grandchildren. The number of inhabitants is probably one hundred thousand.

The country around Canton is beautiful, and healthy. It abounds in all the necessaries and delicacies of life.

---

Who reside in these suburbs?

Describe the Boat Town near Canton.

What of the country around Canton?

This city is the only place in China where Europeans go to trade.

The great article of export is tea; of this, forty million pounds are sent away in a year. The management of trade at Canton is committed to a council called Hong. This council consists of twelve or fourteen rich merchants. The merchants of China are very honourable in their dealings; though, owing to the dishonesty of their servants, they have been sometimes suspected of great roguery. Some friends of mine had a present of a chest of tea, which was brought on purpose for them from China. On opening it, they found a quantity of sawdust in the middle: this must have been put in, instead of tea, by the servants employed to convey it to the ship; and they would have been severely punished if they had been found out.

I wish the Chinese were the only people who deceive and cheat others. Such knavery is equally disgraceful, in whatever part of the world it is practised.

---

What is the chief article of export?

How many pounds of tea are sent in a year away from China?

To whom is the management of trade at Canton committed?

## CHAPTER V.

SOMETHING ABOUT CHINA, THE EMPEROR, PEKIN, AND  
NANKIN.

I HAVE now told you about Canton. To us, it is the most important of all the cities of China. I will now tell you something more about the kingdom. The whole country of China is about two-thirds as large as the United States of North America. The number of people some suppose to be about one hundred and fifty millions, but others make it much greater, even amounting to more than three hundred millions. Very few Europeans have been into the interior of China, because the government is very jealous of foreigners, and will not allow them to travel there.

A few persons, however, have passed through some portions of China, and they all agree in describing the country as full of people. A Scotch gentleman, who spoke the language extremely well, passed through Canton,

---

Why is Canton the most important city to us in China?



dressed in the habit of the country, and went more than a hundred and fifty miles; but he was found out, and immediately sent back, being told, at the same time, that if he was ever caught doing the same again, he would not escape with his life. The Chinese say, themselves, that in China there are more than four thousand cities, that the sea-coast is defended by four hundred and thirty-nine castles, and that the villages scattered over the country are innumerable. The army consists of a million of soldiers.

Almost the whole surface of China is under cultivation. The lands are tilled with the greatest industry, Even steep mountains are rendered productive. Walls are built around them to support the soil, and water is raised by chain-pumps, and sprinkled over them, to give them fertility.

I have told you before, that there are a great many canals in China. These run in every direction, and extend over a whole kingdom. The largest of these is called the Imperial Canal. It extends from Peking to Canton. These

---

What is the extent of China? How many people are there in China?

What do the Chinese say of their country?

What of the cultivation of the soil in China?

What of canals? Of the Imperial Canal?



two cities are but about one thousand miles apart ; but this canal, including its windings, is more than one thousand six hundred miles in length.

One of the greatest curiosities in China is the great wall. It is built of stone, and is one thousand five



THE GREAT WALL OF CHINA.

hundred miles long, It is carried over mountains and valleys, and is generally about thirty feet high. It is so broad that six horsemen can ride abreast upon it. It

---

What of the great wall?

forms the boundary line of China on the north, and was built many hundred years ago, to protect the country from the Tartars, who frequently invaded it. This is the greatest structure, built by human hands, on the face of the globe, and clearly shows the great energy and patience of the Chinese.

The emperor of China, Fze Hing, resides at Peking. This city is one of the largest in the world. It is inclosed by high walls, and is exactly square. The streets are straight, and the principal ones are three miles in length.

It is astonishing to see the immense concourse of people that continually fills them. They are also thronged with numberless mules, camels, horses, and carriages. It is remarkable that, amidst this assemblage of living and moving things, no women are to be seen.

The emperor's palace, which is in the city, covers an extent of ground four miles and a half in circumference. It presents an assemblage of vast buildings, extensive courts, and magnificent gardens, and is surrounded on all sides by a double wall.

From this account, it appears that Peking is truly an immense city. It probably contains nearly twice as many

---

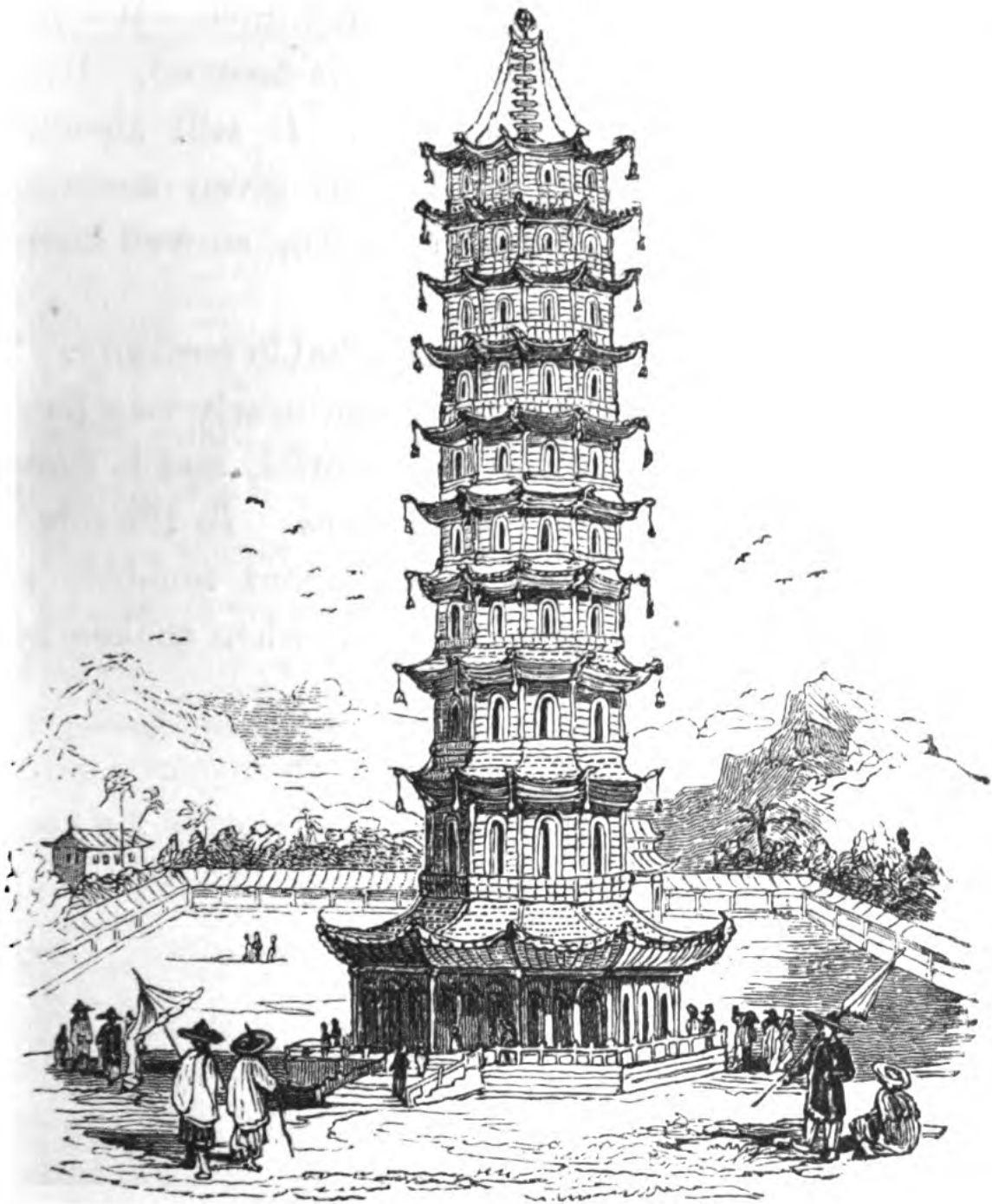
Where does the emperor of China live? What of Peking?  
Describe the emperor's palace at Peking.



EMPEROR'S PALACE, AND CHINESE JUNK.

inhabitants as London. What a prodigious population! We can hardly conceive that so many people could be crowded into one town.

But the Chinese require very little room to live in. Three generations, including grandparents and grandchildren, often live in one house, and the houses are generally small. They are usually surrounded by walls, six or seven feet high. All the people of a house eat in



PORCELAIN PAGODA, OR TOWER, AT NANKIN.

one room, and their beds are only separated by mats hanging from the wall.

Nankin is another famous city of China. It was once the largest in the empire, but now it is decayed. Its walls are sixteen miles in circumference. It still abounds in manufactories of silk. This city has given name to the yellowish cotton goods, called nankeen, so well known in this country.

In this city there is a very remarkable curiosity. This is a tower, which is built of porcelain, nearly two hundred feet high. It is divided into nine stories, and is ascended by eight hundred and eighty-four steps. In the corners of all the galleries are hung bells without number, which produce clear and delightful sounds when shaken by the wind.

---

How many people are there in Peking? Describe the houses in Peking. Describe Nankin.



## CHAPTER VI.

## PARLEY TELLS ABOUT THE PEOPLE OF CHINA.

I WILL now tell you something of the people of China. Kien Long was a celebrated emperor of China, who lived to the age of eighty-six. It was after this emperor that the ship I sailed in was named.

The emperor of China usually resides at Peking; but he has a palace at a little distance from the city, where he sometimes lives. The will of this sovereign throughout his dominions is absolute. He can take away the life or the property of any individual. If he is disposed to do wickedly, there is no law to restrain him. The people bow to his authority with abject and slavish submission.

He is styled the sole ruler of the earth, and the son of heaven. He is sometimes surrounded by a retinue of forty thousand soldiers as his guards, with their colours and

---

What was the name of the emperor of China when Parley was in that country? What can you tell about him?

What do the people style the emperor?

music ; and the numerous princes and grandees of the empire, and frequently tributary kings, heighten this pomp.

Such is the reverence paid to the emperor, that it is customary to kneel before his mandates or written commands, and touch the earth nine times with the forehead. A few years after I was in China, Lord Amherst, an English ambassador, was dismissed, without seeing the emperor, for refusing to perform this ceremony.

The religion of the Chinese is very singular. They do not believe in the Bible, nor do they know at present much about it. The learned men have, in fact, very little religion at all. They pay great reverence to the opinions of Confucius, an ancient Chinese philosopher.

The common people are chiefly worshippers of a deity who bears the name of Fo. They have many temples filled with gigantic images, to which they attribute great virtues, and pay great devotion. The priests are called Bonzes ;

---

What reverence is paid to the mandates of the emperor?

What can you tell about Lord Amherst?

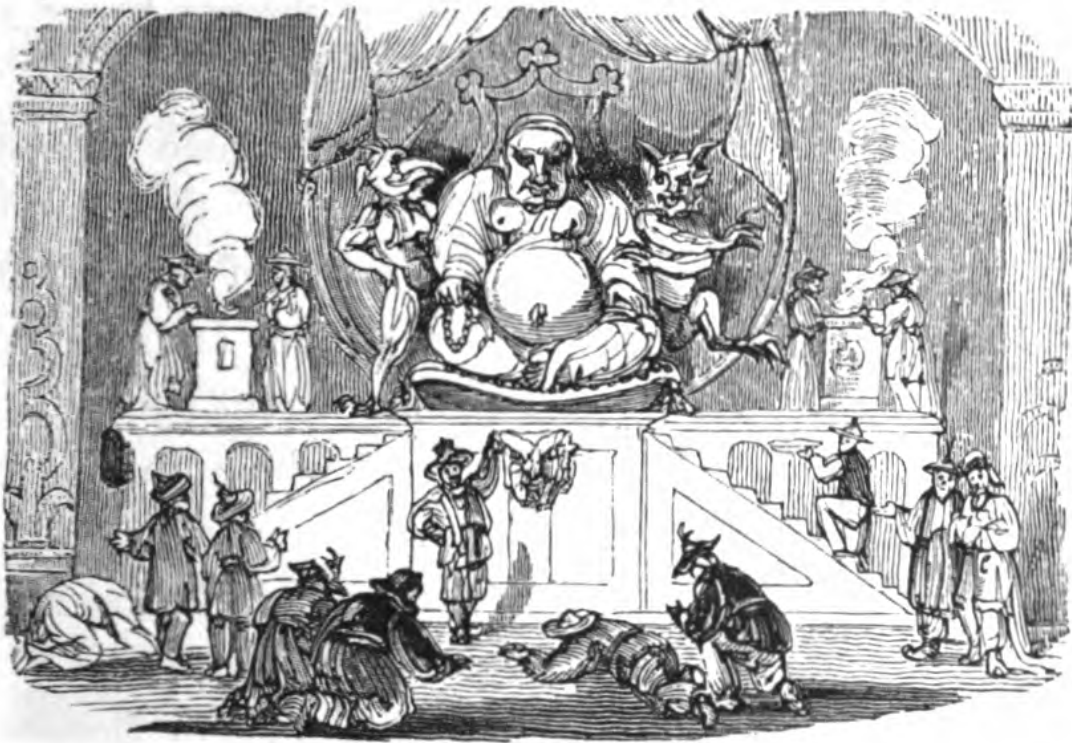
What of the religion in China?

Whom do the learned men reverence?

Whom do the common people worship?

To what do the people pay great devotion?

What are the priests called?



THE CHINESE IDOL FO.

and the people are fond of processions and pompous religious ceremonies.

The truth is, the Chinese are an ignorant and superstitious people, and their religion is a system contrived by cunning priests to obtain influence over them. Like the religion of Mahomet, it is a false religion; it does not make men good, or wise, or happy; it does not teach them how to live well in this world, or how to make due preparation for another. Though the Chinese are clever at some things, they are very unwise in others. I will give you one instance of this. When Lord Macartney went on an

embassy to China, a Chinese was seen filing a bar of steel to make it into a *needle*—What a simpleton !

The English missionaries have made some successful attempts to introduce the knowledge of the Christian religion to these idolatrous people, many of whom inhabit Chinese settlements in the islands of the Indian Ocean. In a village in one of these islands is a street nearly a mile long, inhabited solely by Chinese; of which the missionaries gave us the following account.

We called at several of their houses, and found in each an idol of some kind. That which most surprised us was a French engraving of the Emperor Napoleon Bonaparte, in a gilt frame, before which incense was burning; and the old man, to whom the picture belonged, in our presence paid it divine honours, bowing himself in various antic attitudes, and offering a prayer for blessings upon himself and his family. When we asked him why he worshipped that as a god which came from Europe, and not from his own country, he frankly replied, "Oh, we worship anything."

There is reason to hope that the true religion will in time spread in China. Dr. Morrison, from England, has resided there for many years, and has made a translation of the Scriptures into their language. Mrs. Wilson also, an English lady, has established nine or ten schools for



*little* Chinese girls, who are taught needlework, and to read the sacred Scriptures. These schools depend for their support on the assistance of ladies, who make work-bags, children's muslin frocks, and other articles, which are sent out from England, and are sure to sell in China for high prices.

The Chinese are rather shorter than the Europeans. They are of a pale yellow complexion. A man who is very fat is always thought to be handsome. Little feet are thought to be indispensable to ladies; in order to make their feet small, tight bandages are put on them when they are infants, and continued till they cease to grow; consequently, the women are nearly all cripples, and their feet are frightfully deformed.

The emperor and his family are, alone, permitted to wear yellow clothes; the common people are allowed to wear only blue or black, and white is the colour for mourning. The fashions of dress never change.

The Chinese perform many wonderful feats of strength

What do the Chinese think of fat men ?

What strange opinions have they in regard to the feet of women ?

Who alone are permitted to wear yellow clothes ?

What colours are worn by the common people ?

What is the colour for mourning ?



and agility in their theatres; I will tell you about one of them.



CHINESE FEAT OF AGILITY AND STRENGTH.

Four men stood as close together as they well could, making a kind of solid square; when this was done, two other men clambered up on their shoulders and stood upright, while another man, getting up still higher, stood upon them, all together making a pyramid.

You will, perhaps, wonder how the uppermost man could stand where he did, and how the men at the bottom could bear the weight they had to sustain; but I have not yet done. Another man, in addition to the rest, mounted a ladder and got on the shoulders of the highest.

The upper man was thus raised high in the air, and in this situation another man was given him from the top of the scenes; he laid hold of him fast by the waistband, and held him up over his head for some time. You would have thought that all of them must have come tumbling down together. He who held the man then stood on one leg, and balanced himself and his burthen on the other, and, last of all, carelessly threw his live lumber, head over heels, among the actors on the ground, who caught him in their arms. At the same time he made a somerset on the opposite side, and disappeared among the crowd.

During the time that this feat was performed, the stage of the theatre was as light, and distinct, as at noonday, so that there appeared no opportunity of deceiving the spectators.

The character of the Chinese is by no means an agreeable one. There is nothing like education among the mass of the people. The women are kept in a state of

---

What of the character of the people?

ignorance, dependence, and seclusion. The men, as far as we are able to ascertain, are servile, deceitful, and utterly regardless of truth. From the emperor to the beggar, through every rank of society, through every grade of office, there is a system of cheating and hypocrisy practised without scruple and without remorse. The Europeans have found by experience that no confidence whatever can, in general, be placed in the Chinese; though, as I before told you, there are some honourable exceptions.

Thus I have given you a sketch of China. It is one of the most extensive kingdoms, and is by far the most populous, in the world. Enjoying a delightful climate, and a fertile soil, a land beautifully diversified by hills and valleys, and watered with hundreds of rivers: it is still rather painful than pleasant to contemplate it. However beautiful is the aspect of nature, still, if the people of a country are in religious darkness, and degraded by the influence of a despotic government, that country is unhappy. Since I was at China many changes have taken place. The emperor, Kien Long, is dead. England has been to war with the country, and compelled the people to pay several millions of money; and, at this very time, a revolution is taking place among the inhabitants of this great empire.

## CHAPTER VII.

PARLEY TELLS ABOUT TARTARY AND THE TARTARS.



A MONGUL TARTAR.

I AM afraid my account of China has been a tedious one. I will now tell you of another country, the people of which you may think still more singular than the Chinese. To the north and west of China, is a country

called Tartary. It is nearly in the middle of Asia, and is often called Central Asia. It is, in general, a very elevated country, nearly surrounded by mountains.

This region, spreading out to an immense extent, and including a territory more than twice as large as the United States, is thinly inhabited by various wandering hordes scattered over the country, who are known under the general name of Tartars. But there are many different nations of them: as Mantchoo Tartars, who live near China, Mongul Tartars, and Calmucks.

The people, in their personal appearance, have a strong resemblance to the American Indians, though they are somewhat shorter. They do not settle in towns, and pursue various kinds of business, as people do here. On the contrary, they lead a wandering life, and look with contempt upon those who live in settled habitations, and pursue regular employments.

The Tartars do not till the land, and vegetables form scarcely any part of their food. They live chiefly upon meat, and are very fond of horseflesh, mutton, and venison.

---

Where is Tartary?

How extensive is Tartary?

Whom do the Tartars resemble?

How do the Tartars live?



They have plenty of milk, butter, and cheese. They prefer mare's milk to any other. Of this they make a strong spirit, of which they are very fond. The dwellings of this people consist of tents, which are formed of sticks stuck in the ground, and covered with a coarse sort of cloth, called felt.

The Tartars have a great many horses of a fine breed ; they are excellent riders, and are almost constantly on horseback. It has been said, that they eat, drink, and sleep, on horseback : but this, like some other travellers' stories, is not true.

They are very expert in the use of lances ; these are long weapons, twice the length of a man's body, with an iron point at one end. They are used in war, and in hunting wild animals. The Tartars throw them with such skill and force as to make them pass entirely through the body of a man or deer, at the distance of many yards.

They are very dexterous, also, in the use of the bow and arrow, in which they appear to be fully equal to the American Indians. They are also exceedingly fond of the

---

Describe the horses of the Tartars?

In what are the Tartars expert?

How do the Tartars use the lance?

What other weapons do the Tartars use?

chase. Large numbers of them go together on horseback, in pursuit of deer and other animals. The swiftness of the horses, the boldness of the riders, and the eagerness and expertness of the hunters, render these amusements very animating.

The Tartars are generally Mahometans, though some of them profess other religions. Among other curious customs which belong to them, the Tartars, when they bury a man, bury with him his best horse, and such other articles as he possessed, which they esteem of the greatest value. These, they imagine, will be useful to him in the other world.

I might tell you much more about this singular people, for they have many curious customs, and are a very celebrated race. Having a warlike disposition, and living in a country that is, in general, barren, they have often made inroads upon their more wealthy neighbours.

China has been many times conquered and overrun by them : and the present emperor of China is a descendant of a Tartar prince that once conquered the country. It was, as I have told you, to prevent the

---

What is the religion of the Tartars?

What singular custom have the Tartars?

Why was the Chinese wall built?

invasions of the bold Tartars that the great Chinese wall was built.

These people have, also, frequently descended upon India, and carried off immense riches from that country. They have, in fact, at different periods of time, spread themselves over almost every portion of Asia, and subjected the inhabitants to their dominion.

At the present time, however, these various tribes are subject to the emperor of China, and their country now passes under the general name of Chinese Tartary.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

### PARLEY GIVES AN ACCOUNT OF THIBET.

I MUST not omit to tell you something about another remarkable country subject to China. This is Thibet, a country of lofty mountains and deep valleys, and abounding in rocky precipices, roaring cataracts, and peaks whose tall

---

What have the Tartars frequently done in respect to India?  
To whom are the Tartar tribes now subject?  
What kind of a country is Thibet?

summits are always covered with snow. On the southern boundary of this country are the loftiest mountains in the world. These are called the Himmaleh or Himalaya mountains.

They are more than one hundred times as high as the tallest steeple in England. They have never been ascended to the top by any human foot, and their peaks are always covered with masses of snow and ice, which do not disappear even in summer.

No living thing ascends these awful heights, except some sure-footed goats and solitary birds occasionally wander to them. At a distance, the traveller looks upon these stupendous works of nature with amazement and awe.

When the sun shines upon the glittering tops of these mountains, they seem like magnificent cities of gold and silver, with towers, and steeples, and palaces. When the shadows of evening fall upon them, these seeming cities vanish, and the mountains look like a cloud, heaving its mighty front across the sky, and threatening all around with the coming tempest.

The interior of Thibet is but little known. Few travellers have ever penetrated into these wild regions.

---

How high are the Himmaleh mountains?



The inhabitants appear to be a mild race of Tartars. They have a species of goat, which produces the fine wool of which the Cashmere shawls are made. This wool is carried to Cashmere, in Northern India, and there made into shawls.

These shawls are so much prized, both in Europe and in America, that they sell for two or three hundred pounds each. These are generally second-hand articles. They are first worn by the Hindoos on their heads for turbans. After their beauty is in some degree lost, they are dressed over, and sent to this country.

Thibet is chiefly celebrated as being the seat of the Grand Lama. This is the god worshipped throughout a very considerable part of Asia. He lives in a great temple upon a mountain, called Pictala. In this temple are said to be ten thousand rooms, which are filled with various images and idols of gold and silver. Immense numbers of pilgrims, from nearly all parts of Asia, are constantly flocking to this temple, to pay their homage to the Grand Lama.

The people of Thibet say, that this object of their devo-

---

What can you tell of the inhabitants of Thibet?

What kind of goat have they among them?

What of the Grand Lama?



tion is a man, into whose body the Spirit of God has entered. When the man dies, they say that the Deity then enters



TEMPLE OF THE GRAND LAMA.

the body of another man, and thus renders himself perpetually visible to his creatures.

The man that has, as they suppose, thus become their Deity, sits cross-legged upon a throne, and receives the homage of his worshippers. The Thibetians pretend that a divine odour is constantly exhaled from his body, which renders it peculiarly delightful to be in his presence.

They also say that rivers burst from the rocks, and

*flow* forth at his command, and that flowers spring up, and bud and blossom in his footsteps. All this the worshippers of the Grand Lama say, and, doubtless, believe. They believe, too, that his power can save them from misery on earth, and give them happiness hereafter.

But it is of course a delusion. We, who are blessed with a knowledge of the true religion, cannot but look with wonder upon the superstition of these ignorant Thibetians. Let us remember, however, that for our superior advantages, we are indebted to that good Being who has ordered all things well. Let us remember, also, that much will be required of them to whom much is given.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### SOME ACCOUNT OF JAPAN. A SHORT METHOD OF SAYING PRAYERS.

I AM afraid you will think this is rather a dull story. But consider that I am telling you of people who live on the other side of the globe. We are apt to be so much occupied with things around us, as to be inattentive to what is going on elsewhere.

We look up, and see the sky above us ; we look abroad, and see the sun shining around us ; and we imagine that we are on the very top of the earth, that the sun rises for us, that the seasons,—spring, summer, autumn, and winter,—come and go only for our benefit.

But this is not so. We are no more on the top of it than the Chinese, the Tartars, or the Thibetians. The sun rises on them as well as on us. The skies are over their heads, the moon and the stars shed their light on them ; they, as well as we, have hopes and fears, joys and sorrows. They have even more populous cities, more extensive empires, and can boast a history more ancient and more renowned than our own. Is it not interesting then ; is it not useful ; is it not necessary, if we would be wise, to study the character of other nations ?

You will undoubtedly say, “ Yes.” I shall, therefore, proceed to tell you about Japan. I think you will be amused with the account I shall give you.

Japan consists of a group of islands, as I have before said, to the east of Asia. The whole of these islands are in extent about three times as large as New England, yet they have a population about equal to that of Great Britain.

---

Where is Japan? Its extent? Its population?

The country is full of mountains and hills, yet these are everywhere cultivated, and present the most beautiful scenes. In skill and industry, these people seem to surpass the Chinese.

Japan is very subject to earthquakes. The people are obliged to build their houses low, to prevent their being shaken down by these dreadful convulsions of nature. The thunder and lightning are terrible in this country during the summer.

The Japanese are a very cleanly people. They esteem the Europeans a dirty race. They are also very polite and ceremonious. They have books to instruct them how to behave on all occasions. These books even lay down rules for drinking a glass of water with propriety.

The people of Japan, in their personal appearance, bear a strong resemblance to the Chinese. Their religion also resembles that of China. They are very superstitious, and believe every hill and mountain to be the seat of some divinity. When they are travelling, they think it their duty to say a great many prayers to the gods of the several

---

What of the country? To what is Japan subject?

Why do the people build their houses low in Japan?

What can you tell of the Japanese?

What of their religion?





A JAPANESE LADY.

places which they pass. They have an ingenious contrivance for saving time to such travellers as may be in a hurry.

This consists of a machine, formed in the following manner:—A post is set upright in the ground, in the top of which an iron bar is fixed, so as to turn easily round with a stroke of the hand. On this bar a prayer to the divinity of the place is engraved. The turning this round once is deemed equal to saying the prayer once.

A single stroke of the hand being sufficient to turn the bar round several times, the traveller may offer a great



many prayers without being much delayed on his journey. This is certainly an easy way of worshipping. I think the Japanese, however, cannot suppose their gods to be very wise, else they would not imagine that they would suffer such tricks to be put upon them.

Formerly Europeans were admitted into Japan, and the Christian religion was propagated to a considerable extent by the Portuguese missionaries ; but the government of Japan grew jealous, and at length banished all Europeans from the kingdom. A dreadful persecution then commenced against those Japanese who had embraced Christianity.

The most cruel tortures were inflicted on them. Roasting alive was one of the most merciful punishments inflicted upon these sufferers. Forty thousand people perished in this horrible persecution. Europeans are still excluded from Japan ; and a rock, about sixty rods in length, occupied by the Dutch for the purposes of trade, is the only spot in the whole empire where foreigners are permitted to live.

---

What contrivance have the Japanese for saying prayers ?

What place is there in Japan, where foreigners are permitted to live ?

## CHAPTER X.

PARLEY MEETS WITH AN ADVENTURE. TALES ABOUT TEA.

I HAVE now given you a short account of China, and the tributary countries of Tartary and Thibet, and also of the adjacent empire of Japan. It is, perhaps, time for me to return to my own story, and tell you what happened to me at Canton.

I have told you before that the Chinese did not allow foreigners to enter their walled cities, nor travel in their country. This I knew very well; but, one day I was passing by one of the gates of the city, which was open, and no person was near at the time. I saw that the gate opened into a long street, where there was a crowd of people, and I was strongly tempted to pass in. I, therefore, walked slowly along, until I came to the gate. I was yet unobserved, and ventured a little way into the street. Meeting with no obstruction, I passed along, and had gone six or eight rods into the city, when I was suddenly stopped.

A Chinese appeared before me, and, in a very threatening manner, signified to me that I must turn about. At the same instant he uttered a loud cry, and several other men came running toward me.

By this time I thought it best to retreat, and, turning round, began to walk toward the gate; but one of the men, determining to prevent my escape, passed rapidly by me, and, placing himself between me and the gate, faced me, and flourished a large stick, with an iron point at one end, over his head.

I walked resolutely towards him; and as I came near, he edged out of my way, still flourishing his weapon, and uttering loud cries. After I passed him I walked pretty fast, for the crowd of people thickened behind me, and their cries now filled the air. I got clear of them, however, and arrived safe at my lodgings. I never afterwards attempted to enter within the walls of the city of Canton.

Fond as I am of telling good stories, particularly those that relate to myself, I must still confess that this is the only adventure I had in Canton. I remained there only a few weeks; and, being confined to that portion of the city which is occupied by Europeans, I had few opportunities of gaining information.

The king of England, about the year 1793, sent an ambassador to the emperor of China. This ambassador

was Lord Macartney. He went to Peking, and was graciously received by the emperor. He then came to Canton, and finally returned to England. The story of this embassy has been published in a book.

It tells us many interesting things about Peking, the emperor, and the interior of China. One thing I must not neglect to tell you about, and that is, the gathering of tea. The tea tree grows naturally to the height of eight or ten feet, but the people cut off the branches, and reduce it to the size of a small bush, resembling in size and appearance the black currant bushes of England. On the same plant may be found, at once, leaves, blossoms, and berries. It produces a pod like the nasturtium, which you know is sometimes used for pickling, and as a substitute for capers in making sauce.

These pods are bitter and useless. The leaves of the tree are the valuable part. These are picked off, usually in the morning, while the dew is upon them; they are then rolled on iron plates, and dried in the sun.

The best kind of tea is carefully rolled, leaf by leaf, by



TEA TREE.



women. After the tea is prepared, it is put into boxes lined with thin sheets of lead, and trodden down with the naked feet. Thus packed, it is carefully and closely covered, and sent to market.

The people of China do not drink their tea as we do, with sugar and milk. They take it without these accompaniments, and use it rather for health than for pleasure. It is remarkable, that this plant flourishes in no other parts of the world than China, Japan, and Assam, which is on the eastern border of India.

It grows spontaneously in these countries, yet in China it is cultivated to an immense extent. It sometimes grows on high rocks and ledges, which are not easily accessible. The ingenious Chinese, it is said, have monkeys, which they teach to strip the tea leaves from the trees in such situations.

The monkeys, when they do well, are sure to receive from their masters something to eat. If they behave ill, they are equally certain of being beaten.

Tea was first brought from China to Europe about two hundred years ago. Previous to that time, it was not

---

**How is tea prepared for market by the Chinese ?**

**In what countries only does the tea plant grow ?**

**When was tea first brought into Europe ?**



known in Europe. It was many years after that it began to be used in America. I remember, very well, hearing a man give an account of the first tea he ever saw.



MONKEYS GATHERING TEA LEAVES.

His father had received a small quantity from a friend. The family had heard of tea, but had never learned the method of using it. In the first place, a portion of it was boiled in a kettle, and then they attempted to eat the leaves.

These they found very bitter, and concluded that they had not hit upon the right method of cooking it. Then they put some into a pan, and fried it. This answered no better purpose than boiling. Several other experiments were tried, but without success, and the tea was laid aside as a useless article. This happened less than a hundred years ago.

---

## CHAPTER XI.

### DESCRIPTION OF MALACCA AND THE MALAYS.

I HAD now been about five weeks in Canton ; and our ship being loaded with a cargo of tea and silk goods, we set out on our return to America. We descended the river of Canton, passed Macao, and entered the China Sea. This we crossed ; and, passing between the Asiatic islands, we were soon upon the Indian Ocean.

As nothing very remarkable happened during our voyage to America, I shall take advantage of the interval between this and our arrival to tell you of some other countries in Asia, than those I have described.

Malacca is the most southern part of Asia. It is a large peninsula, which projects far into the sea.

The island of Sumatra lies very near to Malacca. A narrow branch of the sea passes between the two, called the Straits of Malacca.

The inhabitants of Malacca are called Malays. They are a very peculiar race of people. They are spread over



A MALAY WITH HIS BOW.

most of the islands in the Pacific Ocean. They are in general fierce, treacherous, and savage.

---

Describe Malacca.

What of the Malays ?

Malacca has a climate of perpetual summer. The trees are always arrayed in green. The ripe fruit and the opening blossoms are suspended from the same branches ; but the woods are filled with tigers and leopards, which make it extremely dangerous to travel in this country.

In the rivers are great numbers of crocodiles. Sometimes the tigers, when attempting to cross the rivers in pursuit of antelopes, are caught and killed by the crocodiles. Perhaps it was in Malacca that the incident happened which I before related.

There is a good deal of gold in Malacca. It is washed down from the mountains in small particles, and is gathered by the natives in the form of dust. In some of the mountains there is a great deal of tin, but the chiefs who rule over the Malays will not let the people get it. They have an absurd opinion that spirits who inhabit these mountains would be offended, and do mischief to the country if the tin were carried away.

There is nothing too ridiculous to be believed by those who worship stocks and stones. We ought not, therefore, to be surprised at the foolish opinions of the poor ignorant Malays.

---

What is the climate of Malacca ?

What metals are found in Malacca ?

## CHAPTER XII.

ACCOUNT OF INDO-CHINA, AND THE BIRMAN EMPIRE.  
GRAND PROCESSION. MR. AND MRS. JUDSON.

To the north of Malacca is a country which is called on the map Indo-China, and sometimes Transgangetic India, from its being beyond the Ganges. It is sometimes called Further India. It embraces several distinct kingdoms. These are the Birman empire, Tonquin, Cochin China, Cambodia, Laos, and Siam. The inhabitants of these various kingdoms bear a general resemblance to the Chinese, though they are less civilised.

The climate is very warm, and produces many aromatic or spicy trees, and a profusion of beautiful flowers. The cultivation of the land, however, is generally neglected.

The Birman empire is, by far, the largest and most powerful of the kingdoms of Further India. It was in this country that Mr. and Mrs. Judson, of whom you have

---

What kingdoms are there in Indo-China? Describe the climate and country. Which is the largest kingdom in Indo-China?



perhaps heard, met very extraordinary adventures a few years ago. They were American missionaries, sent to teach the truths of Christianity to the Birmese.

The people of this country are idolaters, and worship images; they are also very superstitious. Now, Mr. and Mrs. Judson were sent to instruct the people in the true religion of Jesus Christ. It was but a very few years ago that they were at Ava, which is the capital of the Birman empire.

It is a great city, with multitudes of people in it. The emperor's palace there, is truly a splendid edifice. While Mr. and Mrs. Judson were at Ava, the emperor and his family came to reside at this palace. They were attended by an immense procession of officers and soldiers, viceroys dressed in their robes of state, horses and carriages of all descriptions, hundreds of elephants, with people riding upon them, and crowds of men, women, and children.

Among the rest was a beautiful white elephant, splendidly decorated with costly ornaments, and attended by persons in rich attire. This elephant was an object of great respect, and the people fell upon their faces, and revered it as it passed along. On this occasion Mrs.

---

What can you say of the Birmese ?

Judson had a seat in a beautiful garden. Here the king and queen came, and they had all a rich banquet. It was truly a brilliant spectacle, and far surpassed everything of the kind the missionaries had ever seen before.



BIRMESE AND WHITE ELEPHANT.

## CHAPTER XIII.

## STORY OF MR. AND MRS. JUDSON.

MR. and Mrs. Judson had been some time at Ava, when news came that some British soldiers had come to Rangoon, and taken that place. Rangoon is a large town belonging to the Birman empire, near the place where the Irrawaddy empties into the Bay of Bengal.

You must understand that the British in Hindoostan have large possessions. This country lies directly west of the Birman empire, as you will see on the map. Now the British in Hindoostan were at war with the Birmese, and their troops had come to fight against the country.

The emperor of Birmah, as soon as he heard that the British troops had captured Rangoon, became very jealous of Mr. Judson. He suspected that this missionary was the secret friend and agent of the English.

So one day, just before dinner, an officer with a dozen Birmese, rushed into Mr. Judson's house. They were accompanied by a man with a spotted face, whose business it was to torture or kill such persons as were condemned by the government.

---

Where is Rangoon ?

Mr. Judson was immediately seized, thrown upon the floor, and strongly bound with a cord. He was then dragged away, and treated in the most cruel manner. While they were taking him along, he was thrown forcibly upon the ground, and the cords around his body were drawn so tight that he could scarcely breathe. He was then taken to the death prison, and the door closed upon him.

An officer was afterwards sent to Mrs. Judson's house. He asked her a great many questions, and then went away. He placed a guard of ten men around the house, forbidding any one to enter. Mrs. Judson now took the children into an inner room, and barred the door.

But the men without threatened, with violent language, to break it down, if she did not unbar the door. This she refused to do. They then took two of her servants, and treated them in a very rough manner. At length she pacified them, by promising to give them presents in the morning.

The next morning Mrs. Judson learned the situation of her husband. He was in the death prison, and loaded with chains. She went to the governor, and obtained permission to see him. She saw him lying on the floor, in a dark and gloomy place.

Mr. Judson could not walk, on account of his chains,



but he crept towards his wife, and gave her some directions how to proceed in endeavouring to obtain his release. She was allowed to stay but a few moments, for the rude keepers of the prison hurried her away.

She now went to a relation of the queen, and begged her to petition the queen to intercede with the king, for the release of her husband. The lady was affected by Mrs. Judson's entreaties, and promised to do as she desired. The next day Mrs. Judson went to know the result, and learned that the queen refused to interfere in the affair.

Mrs. Judson returned to her house. Soon after this, officers of the government came and took away what money and other valuable articles they could find in the house. Months passed away, and Mr. Judson continued in prison. He was shut up with one hundred other persons.

It was now summer, and the summer at Ava is excessively hot. The poor prisoners suffered great distress from the heat, the want of fresh air, and the weight of their chains. Mrs. Judson failed not to exert herself for the relief, not only of her husband, but of the other prisoners.

She went to one officer, and then to another, and begged, besought, and prayed, but it was all in vain. At length she was taken sick, and confined to her house



several months. During this period, the sufferings of the prisoners were increased, and Mr. Judson at last sent her word that they were all shut up in an inner prison, and loaded with five pairs of chains each.

After a while, Mrs. Judson was able to go out. She then went to the governor, and begged him to permit her husband at least to be placed in a more comfortable situation. But this was refused. He was soon after taken with a fever. Then again she went to the governor. Worn out with her entreaties he permitted Mr. Judson to be taken to another part of the prison.

He was placed in a little hovel made of bamboos. Here his wife was allowed to come and take care of him; and, though he was very sick, these seemed to them happy moments. Mrs. Judson was one day with Mr. Judson, when the governor sent for her in great haste. She was very much alarmed, but did not hesitate to go.

When she arrived at his house, he detained her a while under some trifling pretence. While she was there, all the prisoners were carried away, and Mr. Judson among them. Mrs. Judson could not learn, at first, the cause of their removal, nor the place to which they were taken; but she expected that they were gone to be executed.

Her distress was now indescribable. She went to her

house, never expecting to see her husband more. A stranger in a strange land, surrounded by a cruel people; a woman without protection or defence, with an infant three months old: her situation was truly desolate. Yet she drew consolation from her religion in this hour of sorrow, and received strength from that unseen Friend of the distressed, to whom she appealed for help.

The next day she discovered that her husband was still living; and that he, and the other prisoners, had been taken to a town at a considerable distance. She determined to follow them. So, taking her little infant with her, she proceeded a part of the way in a boat, and a part of the way in a cart. At length she reached the place, and found her husband among the other prisoners.

They were all tied two and two, and had suffered the most cruel treatment on the journey. It was night, and Mrs. Judson found great difficulty in procuring shelter. At length the jailer permitted her to occupy a little miserable room in his house.

Mrs. Judson's personal sufferings were now greatly increased. She had under her care two Birmese children, whose parents had given them to her. One of these children was soon taken with the small-pox. Mr. Judson's feet were also so much torn and blistered by the journey from Ava, that he could neither stand nor walk.

The other Birmese child was, soon after, taken with the small pox, and then her infant was taken also. At length, worn out with fatigue, care, and anxiety, Mrs. Judson herself fell sick. Still, in this situation, she determined to go to Ava, and get some medicines which she had there.

Accordingly she performed the journey, and in a few days returned. But when she arrived at her miserable home, she was so much exhausted that she could not stand. She had a faithful Hindoo servant, who came to the door to receive her. She was so pale and wasted, that the kind-hearted Hindoo burst into tears.

Mrs. Judson was incapable of further exertion. She lay down upon the mat, for she had no bed, and here for two months she remained. She had no food for her infant, and there was no milk to be obtained for it in the village.

It seemed that the poor babe must die for want of food. But, at length, the jailer permitted Mr. Judson to leave his prison for a little while at a time. So he carried the child to such women in the village as had children, and who would permit the little starving creature to take a part of the nourishment designed for their offspring.

Having been at this place a prisoner for six months, Mr. Judson was at length released. He was sent, by the

Birman government, to a considerable distance, for the purpose of translating some papers, while Mrs. Judson returned to her house at Ava.

Here she was seized, in the absence of her husband, with the spotted fever, and brought so low, that the people around her thought she was dead; but, as if by miracle, she revived. At length her husband returned, and, being set at liberty, he was then united to his family.

The British soldiers who had captured Rangoon, as I have told you, prosecuted their march towards the Birmese capital. They were repeatedly attacked, but the superiority of the British over the Birmese troops, enabled the former constantly to triumph over their enemies.

At length the British troops approached the capital. The people were in the greatest consternation. The emperor, who had proudly refused to make peace with the English, now sent for Mr. Judson. Through his influence, and that of some other individuals, peace was finally concluded, and the British army took their departure.

Mr. and Mrs. Judson also left Ava, and proceeded to Rangoon. In the neighbourhood of this place they prepared to prosecute their grand design of introducing Christianity among the ignorant and superstitious inhabitants of Further India.

But Mrs. Judson's health was impaired by her sufferings



beyond the recovery of medicine. While her husband was absent on a journey of three or four months, she was seized with a fever. Her enfeebled constitution could not withstand this shock, and she died at Amherst, near Rangoon, on the 26th of October, 1826.

She has left behind her a name that can never perish. I have never known a more beautiful example of piety, tenderness, and fidelity, blended with true courage, than is afforded by the life of this admirable woman.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

### PARLEY TELLS ABOUT HINDOOSTAN, THE HINDOOS, AND A HURRICANE.

I SHALL now tell you of a people who may be regarded as the most interesting of all the inhabitants of Asia ; I mean the Hindoos. They live in Hindoostan, and are unlike any other people. The inhabitants of Indo-China, with the exception of the Malays, including the Chinese, the Japanese, the Tartars, and Thibetians, have all a general resemblance to each other, and are supposed to have sprung from the same origin.

But the Hindoos, in personal appearance, in disposition, in character, and in religion, are a distinct and peculiar

---

What nations in Asia are supposed to be of the same origin ?



nation. Their number is truly immense. I suppose there are more than ten times as many people in Hindoostan as in all the United States of America.

In Hindoostan only two seasons are known, the wet and the dry. During the wet or rainy season, great quantities of rain fall, the rivers suddenly rise and overflow their banks, and often sweep off the inhabitants with their houses. During the dry season, the earth is frequently so parched, that every leaf and flower is withered to the ground.

Sometimes dreadful famines take place for the want of rain. In 1793, there was a great famine in consequence of drought; some of the people were so distressed for food that they sold their children for a few pounds of rice.

They have never any cold weather in this country. In a great part of it they have never either snow or ice. In such warm countries the people are not obliged to have thick woollen clothes. The Hindoos wear but little clothing, and this is made of cotton or silk. Their houses are not large and strong like ours, but they are little slender cabins, made of sticks of reed or bamboo, roofed with the large leaves of the palm tree.

---

What is the number of inhabitants in Hindoostan?

What of the seasons in Hindoostan?

Hindoostan is subject to violent hurricanes, with dreadful thunder and lightning. I suppose you have never witnessed a whirlwind. I will describe one to you. We will suppose it to be summer. All around is still and tranquil. The birds are quietly reposing amid the thick branches of the trees. The cattle lie stretched at length, sleeping in thoughtless security in the shade. The sun shines brightly over the landscape, and all nature bespeaks peace and repose.

But soon a small cloud is seen in the distance. It increases in size, and stretches far across the sky. It rapidly approaches; a rushing sound is heard on the distant hills. The cloud seems in great agitation. It moves onward, whirling and boiling like the waters beneath a cataract.

The trees bow their heads before it. The grass and the grain, and all the slender plants, are laid flat upon the ground. The houses tremble; the very hills are shaken. The sky is almost as black as night. A dreadful roar fills the ear, and fragments of wood, trees, and houses, lifted on the wind, are borne along through the air.

The crash of falling trees, the rending of houses in pieces, the tumbling of rocks down the sides of hills, the

---

Describe the dress of the Hindoos. The houses.  
Can you describe a hurricane?

*bellowing* of cattle, the cries of people in distress, with the voice of the tempest, are borne on the gale.

Suddenly the hurricane ceases. Stillness succeeds to the dreadful uproar. The cloud is seen hurrying away over the hills, carrying with it to other places the same destruction it has left behind. The inhabitants come forth, and witness the ruin that is spread around them. Many of their dwellings are thrown down, their crops cut off, and their cattle killed.

Such is a hurricane. We have very seldom a hurricane in our country, but they are very common in hot climates. In the West Indies they occur every year, and in Hindoostan they are very frequent.

---

## CHAPTER XV.

### ABOUT ELEPHANTS, TIGERS, RHINOCEROSSES, AND SERPENTS.

IN Hindoostan, there are a great many wild animals. Among them are the elephant, the tiger, and the rhinoceros. Some of the elephants are caught when young, and tamed. They then become very gentle, and are useful in carrying

---

What of hurricanes in hot climates?

In the West Indies? In Hindoostan?

What wild animals are common in Hindoostan?

burdens, and for taking people from one place to another, on their backs.

The tiger of this country is called the royal tiger. It is the largest and most powerful of the kind. It is a



TIGER HUNT IN INDIA.

match for the lion in strength, and is much more ferocious and active. The tigers are often hunted by the Hindoos, but it is dangerous sport.

Tigers are sometimes brought to this country for shows. They are taken when young, in the following manner:—A

---

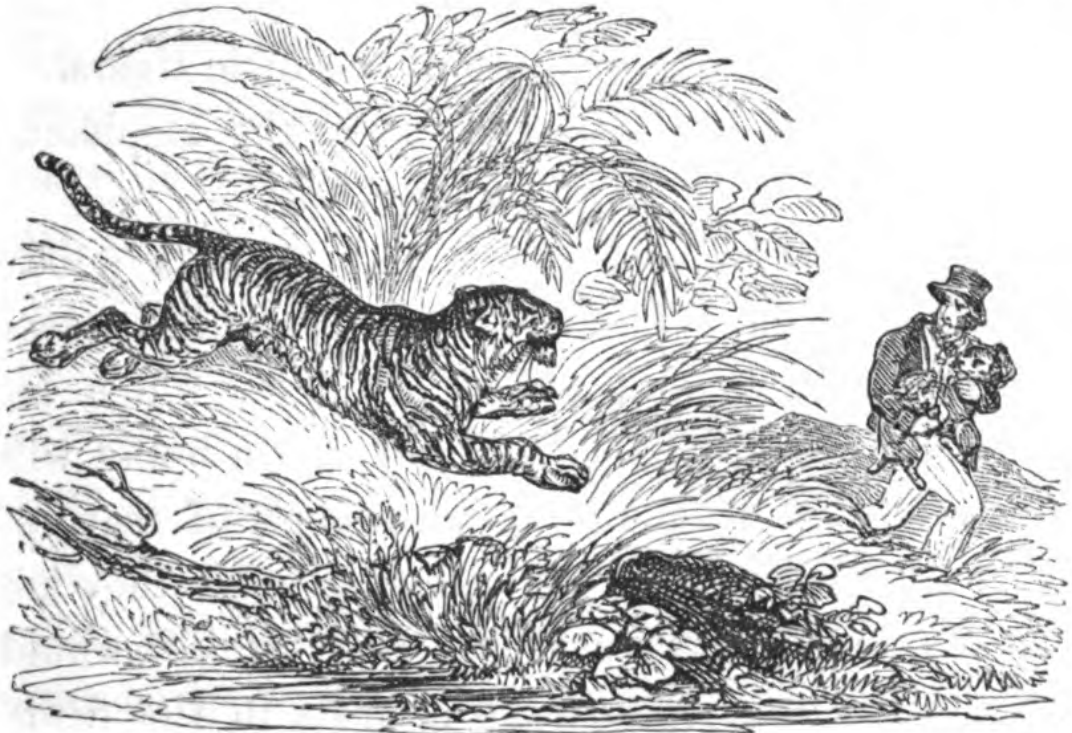
How are the tigers usually taken that are brought to this country for shows?



hunter discovers a den where there are young tigers, and waits till the mother is gone. He then goes to the den, and takes away the little tigers, of which there are generally three or four.

They are beautiful little animals, as soft as kittens: but soon the old tigress comes back, and discovers that her young ones are gone. She follows the track of the hunter, and pursues him swiftly, her mouth open, her eyes flashing, and her claws ready and eager to tear in pieces the man who has robbed her of her little ones.

The hunter, knowing that he will be pursued, flies



HUNTER STEALING WHELPS FROM A TIGRESS.

rapidly through the thicket. Soon he hears the bounding



tigress behind him. He looks back, and sees her coming. He now drops one of the young ones, and continues his flight.

The tigress soon discovers her young one, takes it up in her mouth, and hurries back with it. Having deposited it in some safe place, she again pursues the hunter. He soon sees her coming again, and drops another of the young tigers.

This is taken up, and carried to the spot where the other is placed. Before the tigress can again approach the hunter, he has probably arrived at some village, or reached a boat, or in some other way placed himself out of danger; thus having secured one or more of the little tigers.

The rhinoceros is almost as large as the elephant, and seems in many respects to resemble a hog.

His skin is thick and rough, and seems a good deal too large for him. There are folds in it, across his shoulders and back, and around his legs, which have a very singular appearance. It is said that a bullet will not penetrate the skin of one of these animals of mature age. It is very pleasant to see such creatures when they are put in a cage, or fastened with a chain; but I think it would not be agreeable to meet such huge animals in the fields and forests.

I must not forget to tell you, that in Hindoostan there

are great numbers of serpents, some of which are very large, and some very poisonous. There are such numbers of them, that they breed in the very towns; and the late Bishop Heber, who has written a very interesting book about Hindoostan, says that they sometimes come into the houses, and are found even in the sleeping apartments.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

### RELIGION OF THE HINDOOS.

THE religion of the Hindoos is very curious. By this the people are divided into four classes, or castes. The first class are called Bramins; they are generally priests, and have the charge of religious matters. The second class are the soldiers. The third class are the husbandmen and merchants. The fourth class are common labourers in various employments.

Now the people of these four different classes never marry with each other. They do not live, nor eat together. The three under castes are obliged to pay the most profound respect to the Bramins. The people of the fourth caste are required to serve the Bramins without pay, and prostrate themselves before them whenever they meet.

---

What are the four castes into which the Hindoos are divided?

A man who had been to Calcutta, which is a great town in Hindoostan, once told me, that, while there, he knew a little fellow who was clerk to a merchant ; he was, however, a Bramin. Near his dwelling lived a very rich Hindoo merchant, who belonged to one of the under castes. Very often these two met each other, and on all occasions, the rich old Hindoo merchant was obliged to make the most profound reverence to the little Bramin.

The Hindoos have a great many idols, and worship a great many different gods. Some of these they imagine to be good, and some evil beings. They have a great many temples, and spend a great deal of time in the various services of religion ; yet it is remarkable that the tendency of their devotion is not to make them virtuous.

The religion of the Bible teaches men to do to others as they would have others to do to them. It teaches them to love truth, to practise charity, and do good to all mankind. It teaches them to avoid lying, cruelty, injustice, and bearing false witness against a neighbour. All these things are earnestly taught by the Bible.

But the religion of the Hindoos teaches not these things. It tells them that if they will practise certain ceremonies, drown their children in the rivers, allow themselves to be

---

What can you say of the religion of the Hindoos?

buried alive in the earth, tear their bodies with hooks, cut their flesh with knives, and other things like these, that their gods will then look upon them with favour.

How much happier are we, who possess the true gospel, than these Hindoos, whose minds are darkened by a false religion! It is impossible for any kind-hearted person to consider the state of these Hindoos. without wishing that they might be blest with a knowledge of the Bible. They are naturally an amiable and interesting people, but have the misfortune to be subject to the worst of all heathen superstitions.

A great many missionaries, both British and American, have been sent to them, who have endeavoured to make them acquainted with the Bible. Their success has not been so great as we could have wished, but we may still hope that this part of the human family may yet become acquainted with that salvation which is brought to light by the gospel.

One thing is certain ; our religion is the best gift which God has imparted to man, and the diffusion of it among ignorant nations is one of the highest and noblest enterprises to which a man can devote himself.

I have told you that the English have large possessions in Hindoostan. Calcutta is a very large town, where a



great many English people live, and where many of the houses are built after the European fashion.

A great many vessels are constantly passing and repassing between England and Calcutta. Many vessels also go from America to trade at that place. These vessels bring from thence silk and cotton goods, Cashmere shawls, spices, gums, and many other things.

The British have a great many soldiers in India. They have conquered certain parts of India, and hold the people subject to them. They have also contrived to make many of the chiefs or princes, who rule over the people in various parts of Hindoostan, dependent upon them.

They receive a great deal of money from these princes. They have, in fact, the almost entire dominion of the whole of Hindoostan; and since the war in the Birman empire, of which I told you, they have great power in that kingdom also.

---

What have the British done in India?



## CHAPTER XVII.

PARLEY RETURNS TO AMERICA. A WATERSPOUT.

JAMES JENKINS.

I BELIEVE it is now time for me to finish my story of my homeward voyage from China. We sailed across the Indian Ocean, doubled the Cape of Good Hope, and entered the Atlantic. We stopped at St. Helena a short time, to take in water.

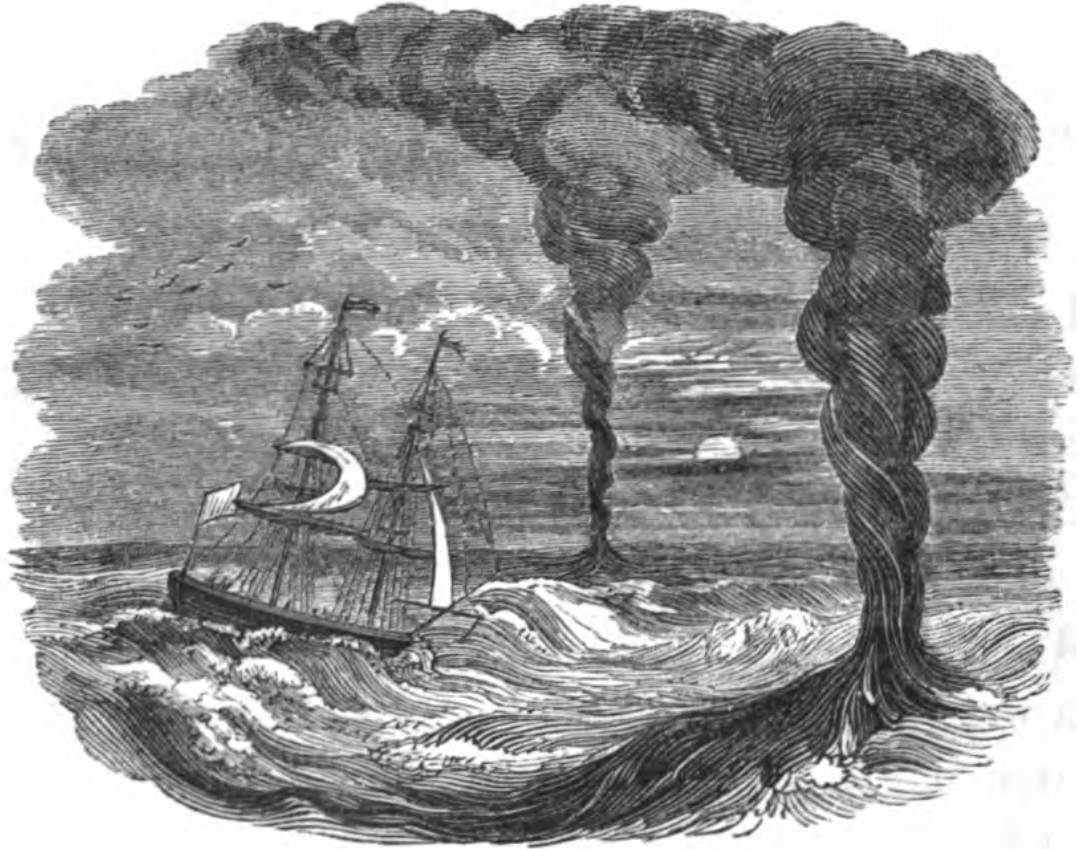
When we were in the latitude of the West Indies, we saw a waterspout. This was truly a sublime spectacle. It appeared like a thick cloud in the air. This was greatly agitated. The sea beneath it was also in violent commotion, and an immense column of water, whirling and foaming, seemed to be drawn up from the sea to the clouds. The waterspout was narrow where it touched the sea, but very broad up above.

Our captain was afraid that we should become involved in this waterspout, and that when it burst, it would fall upon our ship, and sink it in the sea. But this misfortune

---

Describe the waterspout that Parley saw.

did not happen to us ; it soon disappeared ; we sailed on our voyage, and in a short time arrived here at Boston.



WATERSPOUTS.

I had been absent from home several years. I hardly need tell you of the joy I felt on landing, and finding all my friends well. Again I returned thanks to my kind Protector, for preserving me through so many dangers, and for a happy restoration to my home and my country.

There was one thing that, in some measure, abated the joy of my return. This related to my friend James Jenkins, of whom I have before spoken. He sailed for India

about the time I sailed to the Mediterranean Sea. He was mate of a vessel, and was bound to Bombay, a town situated on the western shore of Hindoostan.

A rumour had been brought by a vessel, that his ship was lost in the Arabian Sea in a storm, and that all on board had perished. Nearly three years had elapsed, and nothing had been heard of the ship. The general belief was, that the vessel had sunk, and that all on board had perished. Their friends considered them as buried in the sea. I was reluctantly compelled to believe that my honest and excellent friend Jenkins was sleeping in a watery grave.

A few weeks after my return, I sat by my fireside. It was in December, and a snow storm from the north-east had just set in. I was musing upon some of the past events of my life, and particularly upon those in which Jenkins had participated. I remembered my adventures which were so intimately connected with his own. I recollected our companionship in different places, and recalled many other circumstances which had made him interesting to me. Such musings as these make our hearts tender. I felt very affectionately towards Jenkins. We seldom forget those with whom we have shared joy and sorrow.

I was thus dwelling upon his memory, and bringing back to my imagination his harsh but honest features, when I heard some one rapping at the door. I bade the person come in; the door was opened, and a large man, covered with snow, entered. He had on a sailor's hat and a pea jacket, which is a pilot jacket, or sailor's great coat. He first stamped on the floor to knock off the snow, then shook his shaggy coat, took off his hat, and came up to me.

He had the features of Jenkins; but could it be he? I thought at first it must be a dream; but when I heard his hearty voice, and felt the clench of his hard hand, I knew him to be the real James Jenkins!

---

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### ADVENTURES OF JAMES JENKINS.

YOU will easily believe that our meeting was a joyous one. We sat down together, and Jenkins in a few words told me his adventures. He afterwards related them to me more minutely; and I will now give you some account of them.

He had nearly completed his voyage, and was within a



few days' sail of Bombay, when his vessel was struck with a sudden squall. The sails were all set; and, such was the prodigious force of the wind, that the ship was instantly capsized, that is, thrown over on her side.

The masts were cut away, and she righted. But a hurricane soon followed, and the vessel was tossed so violently upon the waves, that in a little time she sprang a leak. The men laboured at the pumps, but in spite of all their efforts, she gradually filled with water.

Two days and two nights she was kept afloat by incessant exertion. At length, worn out with fatigue, watching, and anxiety, the men relaxed their efforts, the storm continued, and the vessel was soon nearly full of water. No hope remained now but in the long-boat.

This was prepared, and some things were put into it. The captain then, and the sailors, all got into the boat, and put off to sea. It was night when they left the ship, but they could see it go down among the boiling waves. The storm still continued, and the boat was thrown hither and thither by the billows, as if it had been a mere plaything.

The storm continued during the night, and in the morning it ceased. But the sky was cloudy, and the poor seamen discovered, to their great distress, that their compass, which they had put on board their boat, had been washed overboard.



I suppose you have heard of a mariner's compass. It is a very curious instrument, with a little piece of steel, which is called the needle, and which always points to the north. It is this valuable contrivance which enables the seaman, when in the midst of the ocean, to determine his course. Without it, the sailor, when at sea, is often utterly at a loss which way to steer, and knows not whether he is going toward the place to which he is bound, or in the opposite direction.



This was the situation of Jenkins and his companions. The weather continued cloudy, and for several days they knew not in which direction they were going. They continued, however, to row forward, in the hope of meeting some vessel that might take them up.

For more than a week they were in this situation. At length they discovered by the sea-weed, that they were approaching the shore. This filled their hearts with delight, for they had already exhausted their food, and for more than two days they had been entirely destitute of water.

By and by, they reached the land. It was a lonely,

desolate spot, presenting nothing to the view but an uneven desert of sand. The hearts of the poor seamen now sank within them. There was no human habitation in sight, and there were no traces which seemed to indicate the vicinity of man. A few ostriches fled affrighted across the desert, and these were the only living things that met the eyes of the wanderers.

Parched with thirst, and famishing for want of food, they re-entered their boat, and coasted along the shore. Faint and weary, they repeatedly landed, but all wore the same dry, barren, and desolate aspect.

At length they landed again, and determined to divide themselves into different parties, and go in search of water. Four of the men were so exhausted, that they lay down on the sand, and resigned themselves to their fate. The rest departed in various directions. Jenkins and one of the sailors went by themselves.

They proceeded a considerable distance, but found no water. The heat was now intolerable. The sand was so hot as to blister their feet in walking over it. The air was suffocating, and yet not a drop of water could be found.

The poor sailor who accompanied Jenkins could proceed no farther. His tongue was so much swollen, and his mouth so dry, that he could not speak. Looking up with a piteous expression, he made signs for Jenkins to go

forward, and leave him to his fate. But this the latter refused to do. He sat down by the poor man, and contributed all in his power to alleviate his distress.

Occupied in these humane though unavailing efforts, Jenkins for some time did not look around him. By and by he heard a noise, which caused him to look up. To his great surprise he saw that a man in a strange dress was



JENKINS AND THE POOR SAILOR.

standing by his side, and that a loaded camel was a short distance from him.

Jenkins perceived at once that the man was an Arab. He begged him, by signs, to give him some water. The

Jen  
begged

Arab handed him a leathern bottle, containing several gallons. Jenkins applied it to the lips of the dying man, but it was too late; with a feeble groan he stretched himself upon the sand, and breathed no more.

Jenkins, having refreshed himself with a draught of water from the bottle, was about to set out with it towards his companions. To this the Arab objected. Jenkins endeavoured to make him understand that he had friends at no great distance, who were dying for want of water.

But the Arab was immovable. Soon after about a dozen more Arabs came up, with as many camels. Jenkins was instantly seized, his hands were tied behind him, and he was placed on one of the camels.

For several days the party travelled over the desert. At length they came to a tribe consisting of several hundred Arabs, with a great multitude of cattle. They were living in tents, and subsisted chiefly upon the milk of the camels.

They had remarkably swift and beautiful horses. Of these they were very fond. They fed them with the greatest care, kept them sheltered under the same tents where they themselves slept, and caressed them, as if they were their dearest companions.

Jenkins had no great difficulty in discovering that he was in Arabia, and that he was among one of those



wandering tribes who inhabit the vast deserts of that country.

---

## CHAPTER XIX.

### SOME ACCOUNT OF ARABIA. JENKINS'S ADVENTURES CONTINUED.

I MUST now tell you a little about Arabia. It lies to the east of Egypt, and is separated from it by the Red Sea. When the children of Israel fled from the persecutions of Pharaoh, they crossed the Red Sea and entered Arabia. It was here that they wandered about, forty years, in search of the land of promise, to which their prophets had directed them.

Mount Sinai, at the foot of which they encamped, and where Moses received the ten commandments from God, is still to be seen in the western part of this country. It was in Arabia, too, that Job lived. The land of Uz is supposed to have been situated in the north-eastern part, not far from where Jenkins was taken by the Arabs. Sometimes large caravans of pilgrims and merchants cross the deserts. Hin-

---

Where is Mount Sinai? Where was the land of Uz?



doos, Malays, Persians, Arabians, negroes, and others, go together.

Arabia is a very extensive country, and has about as many inhabitants as the whole of the United States. Those parts which border on the sea are generally fertile, but the whole interior consists of immense deserts. Along the sea there are a good many towns and villages, but the deserts are occupied by roving tribes, who possess large flocks. They live by pasturage, feeding on the flesh and milk of their cows and camels, and plundering all such travellers as come in their way. It was into the hands of one of these tribes that Jenkins had the misfortune to fall.

He soon found that his situation among these people was by no means a pleasant one. He was, in fact, reduced to slavery, and made to perform every species of drudgery. The Arabs, being Mahometans, and finding that Jenkins was a Christian, looked upon him with great contempt, and seemed to delight in making his situation disagreeable.

But all this he bore with patience, silently resolving to seize the first opportunity to escape. But near six months elapsed before any chance of this kind was offered. At length, the cattle having devoured all the grass and shrubs

which grew upon the spot where they were, the tribe resolved to remove.

The tents were taken down, and rolled up. These, with the few articles of furniture, and the women and children, were placed on the camels. They now commenced their march, and proceeded across the desert. As the weather was excessively hot, they rested by day, and travelled at night. They were guided by the stars in their course.

One day Jenkins perceived among the tribes a sudden panic, as if they were struck with fear. The men and women fell upon their faces, and lay flat on the ground. The camels knelt down, and placed their noses close to the earth. Jenkins looked around for the cause of all this.

At a little distance he saw a thick cloud of sand moving directly towards them. It appeared like a huge mountain coming to overwhelm them. Jenkins imitated the rest, and fell upon his face. The cloud rolled on, and buried the travellers beneath it. It was almost impossible to breathe, the air was so filled with sand.

At length it passed by. The people rose from the ground, and shook from them the sand, which had half covered them. They then proceeded on their journey. These moving clouds are very common in these deserts,

---

Describe the moving clouds of sand that Jenkins saw.

and sometimes travellers are buried so deeply in the sand as to perish.

It was but two or three days after this, that a hot wind, called the Simoom, began to blow. The effects of this were dreadful. The stunted leaves and flowers, which grew here and there, were almost instantly withered, as if they had been scorched by fire.

The horses put out their tongues, as if in the greatest distress, and a number of the camels died. The people, also, suffered exceedingly from the suffocating and poisonous quality of the atmosphere. This lasted for two days; then the simoom passed by, and the travellers continued on their route.

One night there was a sudden halt of the party. Then about thirty of the men mounted on their fleetest horses, and rode off in different directions. Jenkins could not imagine at first what this meant. He afterwards learned that there was a caravan at no great distance.

This consisted of about one hundred camels and fifty people; several of them were merchants, who had with them a good deal of valuable merchandise. The thirty Arabs, though they set out in different directions, all suddenly united, and, surrounding the caravan, fell upon the astonished travellers at the same instant.

---

Describe the simoom.

There was little or no resistance offered, and the Arabs began their plunder, seizing upon the most valuable articles; they soon loaded their horses, and left the caravan to pursue its route. They then returned to the tribe, loaded with their spoils.

At length the tribe arrived at a tolerably fertile spot in the desert. Here they determined to remain. Jenkins now learned that they were not more than two hundred miles from the north-eastern coast of Arabia. He therefore determined, as soon as possible, to steal away silently, and take his chance of escape across the desert.

One night, when the sky was obscured by clouds, he silently left the tribe, and proceeded in an easterly direction. He had provided himself with a sword and a pair of pistols, and determined, if pursued, to resist to the utmost. He travelled the whole night, and in the morning hid himself beneath some thorny shrubs.

Here he slept a great part of the day. He had with him some dried camel's flesh, upon which he subsisted. He was fortunate in finding some water, though it was brackish. Towards night he again set out, and travelled with the utmost diligence till morning.

Thus for four days and four nights he pursued his solitary journey. On the fifth day, his meat being entirely gone, he began to feel the pressure of hunger. Fortunately



he discovered a young ostrich, which he approached from behind a bush, and shot with his pistol.

He gathered a few dried branches of the acacia, a prickly shrub which produces gum-arabic. These he set on fire with a flash of his pistol. By this fire he roasted a piece of the ostrich, which he found to be very good.

Scarcely had he finished his meal, when he saw a man on horseback, at a considerable distance, coming towards



JENKINS AND THE ARAB.

him. Jenkins immediately perceived that this man was attracted by the smoke. Very soon the horseman approached, and began to ride round him in a wide circle.

He came nearer and nearer, and Jenkins soon recog-



nised him as one of the Arabs whose tribe he had left. Having rode around him several times, the horseman suddenly darted from his circular motion, and rode directly towards Jenkins. Whirling his sabre over his head, he came like an arrow shot from a bow. Jenkins was not unprepared. He stood with his pistol in one hand, and his sword in the other. He was a man of great strength and activity.

The Arab was within a few feet of him, with his sabre lifted in the air. It descended like lightning, and passed about an inch above the head of Jenkins, thus leaving him unharmed. The Arab escaped not so well. Jenkins discharged his pistol, but without effect. The horse, however, affrighted, started suddenly aside, and threw the Arab on the ground. But he was instantly upon his feet, and he ran with great agility toward his horse. The trusty animal, at first, was running off with great speed, but when he heard the call of his master, he turned instantly round, put forward his ears, and came trotting up to him, with the strongest tokens of interest and affection. The Arab leaped upon his back, and galloped off across the plain.

Jenkins now, knowing his route was discovered, supposed that he should be immediately pursued by more than one of the Arabs. He therefore determined to press his

journey with the utmost expedition. That day, and the next night, he travelled without ceasing.

The aspect of the country now began to change. The land was considerably more elevated; and dates, palms, and other trees, were scattered, here and there, over the landscape. The next morning he discovered the sea at no great distance. In a few hours he reached the coast.

Here he found a few huts, which looked like a village. They were, however, partly in ruins, and there seemed not to be a single inhabitant left. He wandered about, vainly searching for some human being who might give him food.

After reflecting a long time upon his situation, he determined to take possession of one of the huts, and live there till some vessel should come in sight, and take him from this dreary coast. Here he remained for several days, living upon dates, and a few small fish that he caught with his hands.

At length he discovered a small vessel, at no great distance from the shore. He went upon a rock, and made a small fire. The smoke was discovered by the people in the vessel, and they cautiously approached the place. Jenkins went to meet them, and, to his great disappointment, found that they were people with dark skins and a savage aspect.

He made no resistance, so they took him on board of

their little vessel. He could not understand their language, which he found was different from that of the Arabs. After sailing two days, they came to land. They went ashore, and at no great distance came to a little village of small mud huts.

---

## CHAPTER XX.

### JENKINS'S ADVENTURES CONTINUED.

IF you look upon the map of Asia, you will observe that Arabia is separated from Beloochistan by a narrow sea, called the Gulf of Ormus. It was across this gulf that Jenkins was carried, and the country to which he was taken was what is now called Beloochistan.

The inhabitants of this country consist of various tribes, some of whom are in a savage, and others in a barbarous state. Many of them are wholesale robbers, who, mounted on camels, attack villages by night, and carry off the inhabitants for slaves. These they often blindfold, so that they may not see in what direction they are taken away, and thus have the means of finding their way back to their own country.

---

Where is the Gulf of Ormus ?

It was by some of these people, called Belooches, that Jenkins was captured. I have not time to tell you all the details of this captivity ; I can, therefore, only tell you, in general terms, what happened to him.

In the first place, he was taken across a sandy desert to Kelat, and sold as a slave to the khan, or king. Kelat is the capital of Beloochistan. The Belooches, or Beloochistans, for they are called by both these names, are capital horsemen and famous marksmen. It is said that, when on full gallop, they can send a bullet from a matchlock through the body of a flying bird. The khan rules over some of the tribes of Beloochistan. The rest are subject to the king of Afghanistan.

After remaining here in servitude a long time, Jenkins was purchased by a merchant of Cabul, and went with him to that city. This is the capital of Afghanistan, and is a considerable city. The king resides there. The Afghans are an interesting people, and are far superior to the Belooches. They have regular schools in all the towns, and the people are passionately fond of wild and extravagant stories.

From Cabul, Jenkins went with his master on a trading

---

Which is the capital of Beloochistan ?

Which is the capital of Afghanistan ?



expedition to Ispahan. This was once a magnificent city, but it has lost its ancient splendour. Here he fell in with an English traveller, whom he persuaded to pay his ransom to the Cabul merchant.

To reward the Englishman for his liberality, Jenkins agreed to accompany him in the capacity of a servant. Thus freed from slavery, and in the society of persons who spoke the same language as himself, he became cheerful and happy.

They soon set out for Teheran. On the way they passed by an immense salt desert. In some parts the salt is here so thick as to cover the ground with a crust, which has the appearance of snow. At length they arrived at Teheran. This is now the capital of Persia.

I could tell you a good deal about Persia, if I had time. The people are the most polite, gay, and learned of all the Asiatics. They are fond of poetry, delight in music, and are much addicted to dress. They bear a great resemblance to the French, and are as fond of amusements as the people of Paris.

From Teheran, the travellers proceeded to the Caspian Sea. This they crossed, and entered Independent Tartary.

---

What of Ispahan ?

Which is the capital of Persia ? What is the character of the Persians ?



This country they found thinly inhabited by different tribes of Tartars. Along the Caspian Sea it was tolerably fertile, but, in the interior, it was desolate and mountainous. They were several times attacked by the people, who seem to be given to robbery.

They soon left this inhospitable country, recrossed the Caspian Sea, and entered the Caucasian countries. Here they had occasion to admire the fine forms of the men, and the beauty of the women. They now entered Syria, and visited Aleppo.

From this place they proceeded to Jerusalem. In this



THE CITY OF JERUSALEM.

celebrated city they remained a long time. It is now much

---

What can you tell of Independent Tartary ?

smaller, and far less splendid, than it was in the time of Solomon.

It is about two miles and a half in circuit. The streets are narrow, but straight, and well paved. The houses are well built of stone, but there are no windows in the lower stories, so that a person in the street might imagine himself to be in a prison.

The modern city is built upon a hill, the ascent of which is steep on all sides but the north. It is surrounded by mountains, between which and the city is a fine valley, beautifully cultivated.

The Jews, who once were a great nation, have now lost their power. They are scattered over the world. Wherever they exist, they still carry with them their peculiar religion, their singular customs, and their strange opinions and feelings.

Their country is now given up to Turkey. Their holy city, in which David reigned, where Solomon built his temple, and our Lord Jesus Christ performed his miracles, is now in the hands of those who believe only in Mahomet.

It becomes all who are Christians to practise kindness to every class of people under the face of heaven, whether they be Turk, Infidel, Jew, or Christian. This, however,

should not make us blind to their errors. The hardness of heart, and unbelief of the Jew, have, doubtless, brought many afflictions upon his head. Let it be a warning to us all.



GROTTO OF THE NATIVITY, BETHLEHEM.

## CHAPTER XXI.

## CONCLUSION OF JENKINS'S ADVENTURES.

AFTER remaining several weeks at Jerusalem, Jenkins took leave of the English traveller. The latter was going to Mecca, in Arabia, to visit the famous temple of Mahomet, while the former was anxious to return to his native country. Embarking at a small port on the Mediterranean Sea, he sailed for Smyrna. At this place he found a vessel going to Boston.

On board this vessel he took passage, and arrived a few weeks after I reached America, as I have related.

I have now told you something about most of the countries of Asia. I could tell you a great deal more if I had time. It would be very pleasant to me, and perhaps entertaining to you, to tell you the history of these countries.

A great many remarkable events have taken place in Asia. Here the great things recorded in the Old Testament chiefly happened. Here the first great empires arose. Here most of the religions, which have exerted an extensive influence over mankind, had their origin.

It would certainly be interesting and instructive to go back, and study what has passed in regions so celebrated as these. But all this is too extensive a field for me to enter upon. I should have been glad to have given you a more particular account of Siberia. Not many travellers have visited that cold region; but our curiosity is excited in proportion to the difficulty of gratifying it.

Along the southern parts, bordering upon Tartary, the Siberians resemble the Tartars. Along the northern parts, the people are very short, not being higher than the shoulders of a man among us. They live like the Laplanders, depending upon reindeer chiefly for their subsistence, and for most of their comforts.

At the north-eastern extremity of Asia is a great peninsula, called Kamtschatka. The inhabitants are called Kamtschatdales. They live partly beneath the earth, in mud cabins, and subsist to a great extent on the products of the sea.

Near the termination of this peninsula are some of the most sublime mountains in the world. They rise suddenly from the plains, to the height of nearly four miles. Their

---

What can you tell of the Siberians ?

What of Kamtschatka ?



peaks are always covered with snow, and several of them being volcanic, and in constant activity, light up this



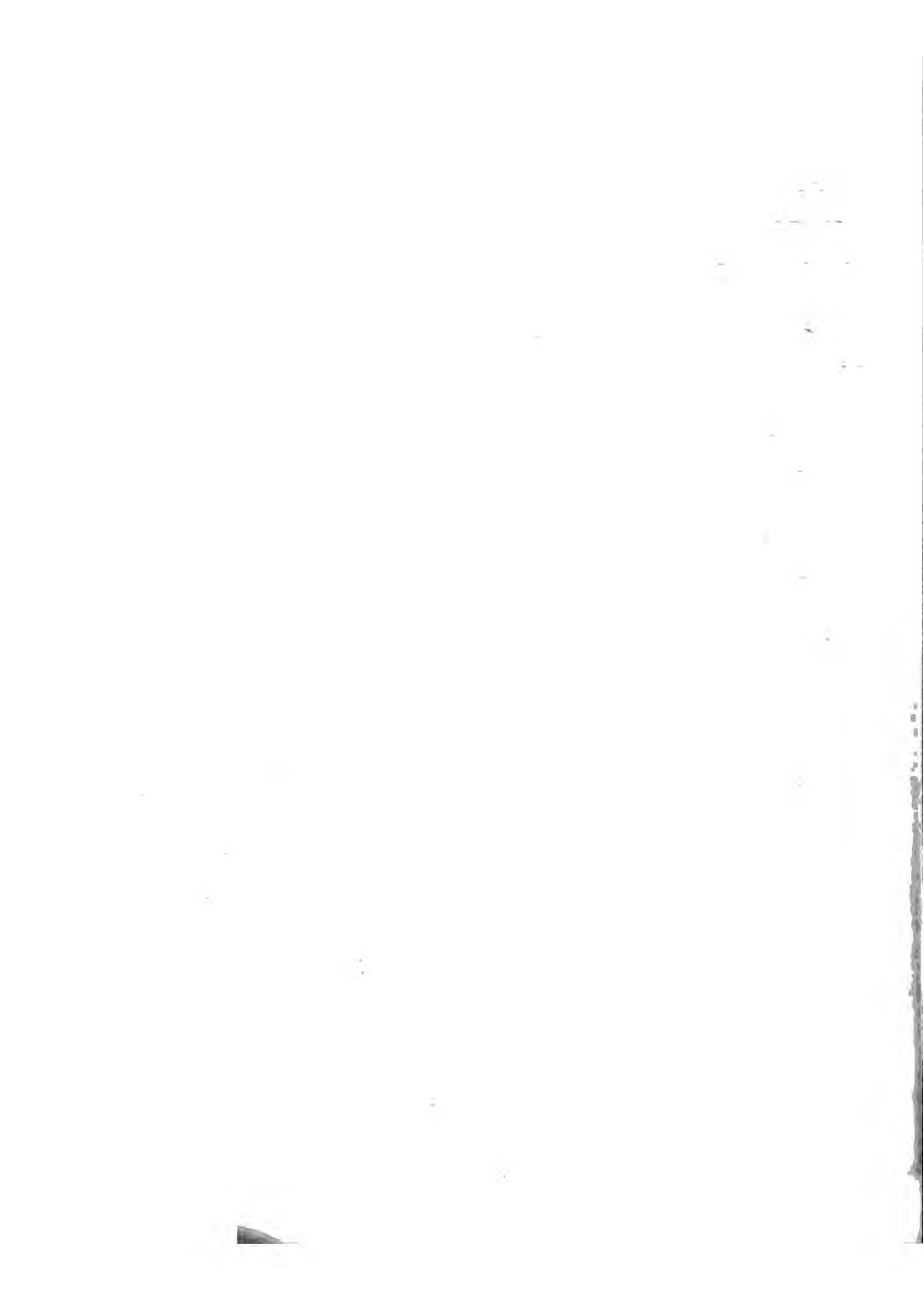
A KAMTSCHATDALE TRAVELLING WITH HIS DOGS.

cold and desolate extremity of the eastern continent with terrific splendour.

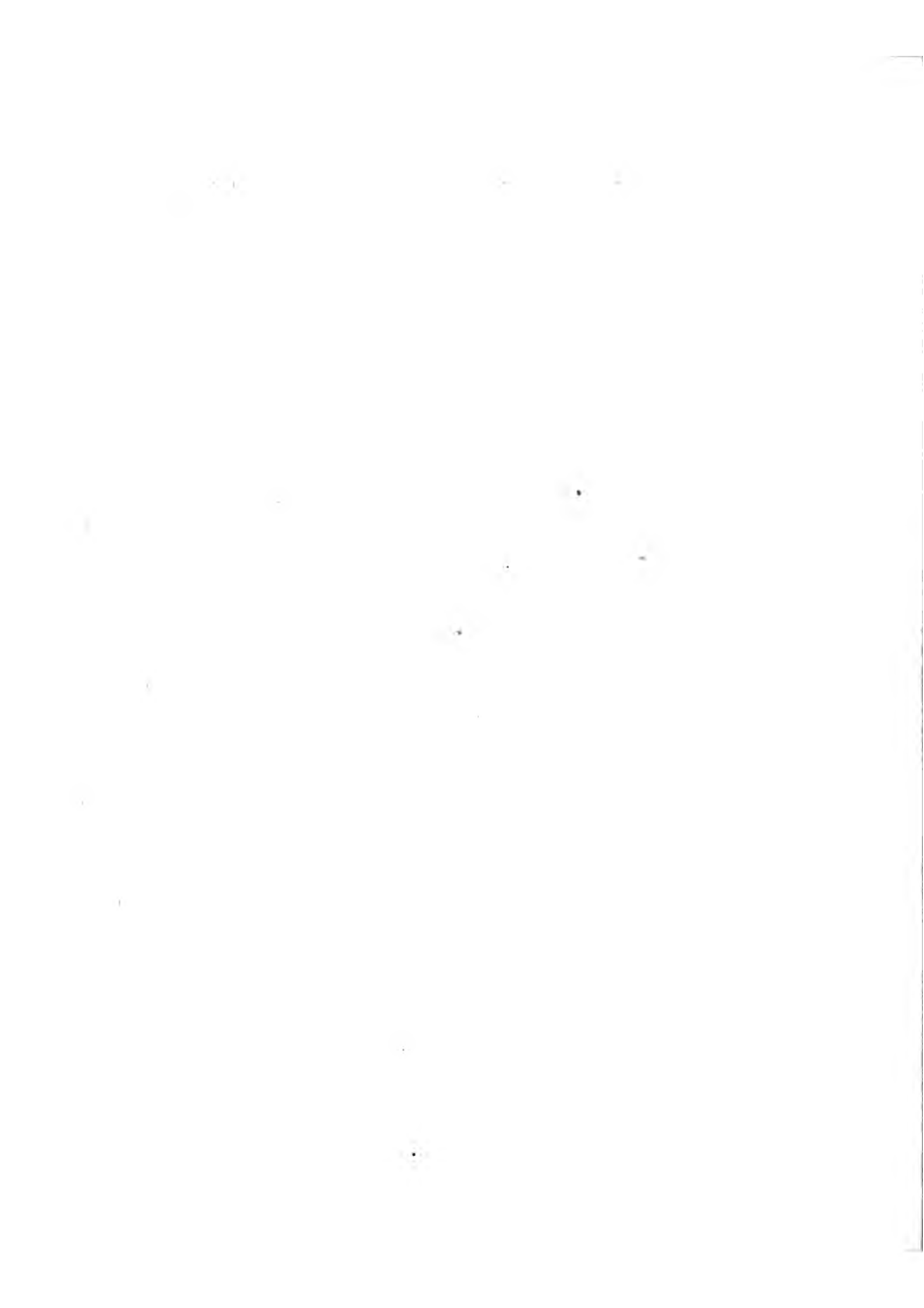
**PETER PARLEY'S**  
**TALES ABOUT AFRICA.**



**PETER PARLEY TELLING HIS TALES.**









PETER PARLEY'S  
TALES ABOUT AFRICA.

---

---

CHAPTER I.

PARLEY GOES TO THE MEDITERRANEAN, AND SEES AN  
ERUPTION OF MOUNT ETNA.

I AM now going to tell you of what happened nearly thirty years ago. After my return to America, as I have told you in my Tales about Europe, I sailed in a ship for the Mediterranean Sea, which lies between Africa and Europe; Africa being to the south, and Europe to the north of it. If you look to my map of Africa, you will

---

Between what two countries does the Mediterranean Sea lie?  
Which way is Africa from the Mediterranean?  
Which way is Europe from the Mediterranean?

understand this all the better. In going to this sea from America, we must cross the Atlantic Ocean.

The name of the ship I sailed in was the Swan. She was a fine vessel, and I was the second mate. Every ship has one or more mates, whose duty it is to assist the captain in navigating the vessel.

I went on board the ship at New York, and we set sail. We had a fair wind, and in a few days we approached the Bermudas, a group of small islands in possession of the English. They are in number about four hundred, but very few of them are habitable. The principal is St. George's, which has a small town and several harbours, defended by two castles. The air is, in general, salubrious, except during Midsummer, when the heat is oppressive. Winter is scarcely perceptible. These islands produce the cedar and palmetto trees, tobacco, legumes or pulse, and various fruits; and the fertile spots yield annually two crops of Indian corn. Here also are a great variety of birds, and abundance of fish: the islands are subject to hurricanes, occasionally tremendous.

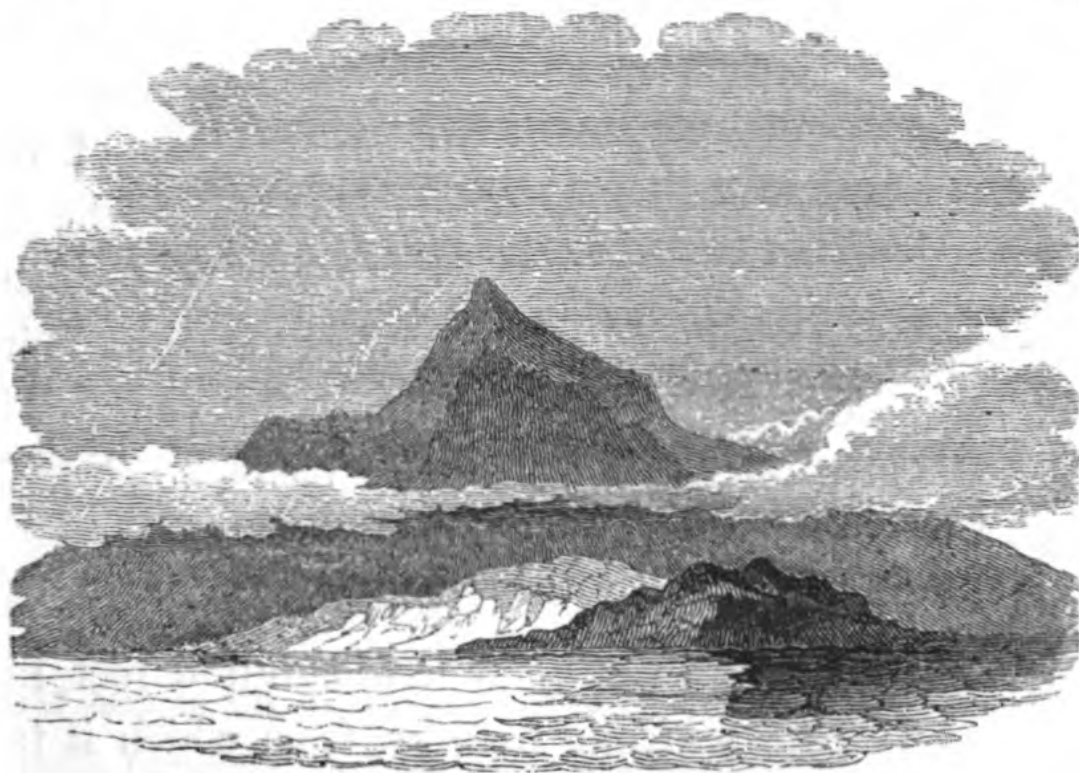
---

In going from America to the Mediterranean, what ocean do you cross?

What was the name of the vessel in which Parley sailed to the Mediterranean? Which way did he sail?

What group of small islands did he pass? Describe the Bermudas.

We shortly after saw some of the Canary Islands, where canary birds first came from. These islands are thirteen in number, seven of which are of considerable size ; the six others are very small. They are supposed to have been known to the ancients under the names of the Fortunate Islands. They are elevated, and full of mountains, some of which, particularly the Peak of Teneriffe, are among the



THE PEAK OF TENERIFFE.

loftiest in the world. Some travellers have asserted that the Peak could be discerned at the distance of two hundred,

---

What islands did he pass after the Bermudas?  
Describe the Canary Isles.

or even three hundred miles; but this is an exaggerated account. I should say that it could not possibly be seen at a greater distance than one hundred and fifty miles. It is so high that it is almost always covered with snow. As I saw it from our ship, it looked like a tall thunder-cloud piled very high in the air. All the coasts are high, the rocks rising frequently in the forms of castles. Humboldt, a very celebrated traveller, mentions that his captain actually mistook one of them for a fort, and sent a boat on shore, with a message for the governor! The appearance of these islands is extremely beautiful. In Grand Canary, the principal of them, there are two harvests, and sometimes three, in a year. The inhabitants cultivate sugar canes, and vines, from which the wine called sack or Canary is made. They have excellent fruits, such as lemons, pears, apples, figs, peaches of several kinds, and plantains.

At length we came in sight of Gibraltar. This is a town situated on a rock, one thousand five hundred feet high. On this rock there is a strong fortress, from which it takes its name. Gibraltar is in Spain, and forms the most southern point of Europe. The fortress has several thousand men in it, with a great number of cannon. At the present time

---

Describe the Peak of Teneriffe.  
What of the town of Gibraltar?

the fortress is in the possession of the British, and is occupied by English soldiers. It is situated at the entrance of the Mediterranean Sea.



THE TOWN AND ROCK OF GIBRALTAR.

Near the town of Gibraltar is the Strait of Gibraltar. This strait consists of a narrow channel, where the sea flows from the Atlantic Ocean into the Mediterranean. The strait is fifteen miles across at the narrowest part. As we sailed along through it, I could see the land on both sides

---

What of the fortress of Gibraltar?

What of the Strait of Gibraltar?



of us. On the left hand was Europe, on the right hand was Africa.

We now entered the Mediterranean Sea. This sea is two thousand miles in length. In some places it is two or three hundred miles wide; in other places it is much narrower. This sea is surrounded with the coasts of many countries, containing cities, towns, and villages, and a multitude of inhabitants. A very extensive trade, or commerce, is carried on upon this sea; there are ships from all the countries of Europe, crossing it in every direction.

Our voyage was a very prosperous one. It is seldom that a vessel crosses the Atlantic without meeting with very rough weather. We, however, had no storms, and, in forty days after I left New York, I was in Sicily. This is the largest island in the Mediterranean, situated between Italy and the coast of Africa. The climate is very pleasant, the heat of summer being tempered by the fresh breezes from the sea. But the island is subject to earthquakes, and a very unhealthy wind, called the sirocco, or south wind. It has always been noted for its fertility, and contains salt mines. Its principal exports are silk, corn, salt, olive oil, sumac, wine, and fruits of various kinds; also skins of goats,

---

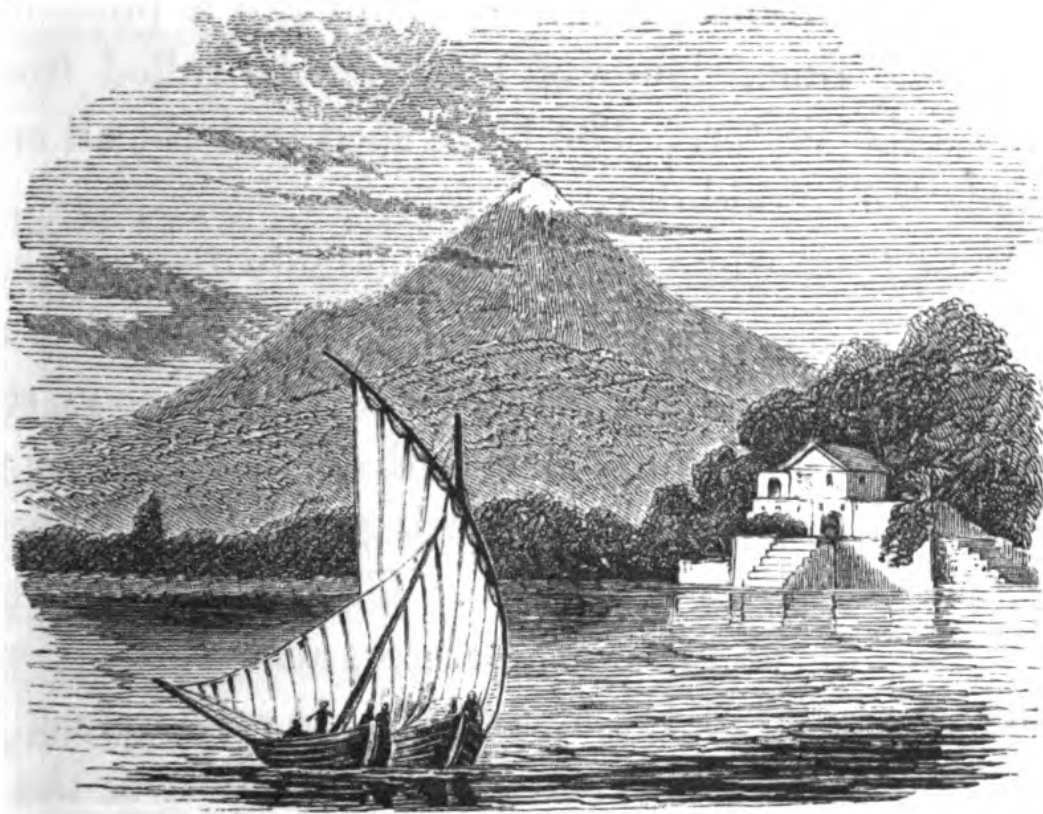
What of the Mediterranean Sea?

How long was Parley in going from New York to Sicily?

What of Sicily?

kids, and other animals. The object of our voyage was to procure fruits and wine, to carry back to New York.

Very soon after our arrival, we unloaded our ship, and began to take in our cargo. I wished very much to go to the top of Mount Etna, but we were so busy, I could not be spared. Mount Etna is situated in the island of Sicily, and is one of the most celebrated volcanoes in the world.



MOUNT ETNA.

A volcano, as you know, is a mountain that throws out fire, smoke, ashes, and melted stones called lava, at its top. This

---

What of Mount Etna?      What is a volcano?

is called an eruption. The hole at the top, through which these things are thrown, is called the crater.

Though I could not go to the top of Mount Etna, I had an opportunity of witnessing one of its eruptions. It was truly terrible. One night, loud rumbling noises were heard in the mountain, like distant thunder. Very soon, a blaze issued from the crater, which seemed to rise to the very clouds, and to stand on the mountain like a pillar of fire. At the same time, clouds of black smoke rolled from the mouth of the crater. The blaze shed its light all around, and made it like mid-day.

After a little while, the blaze suddenly disappeared. It seemed to fall back again into the mouth of the crater. In an instant all around was darkness. But very soon, red-hot stones were thrown from the mouth of the volcano, which rose high in the air, with a whizzing sound, and then fell upon the sides of the mountain. Then a mass of red-hot lava swelled to the top of the crater, and, gushing over it, ran down the side of the mountain. It rolled along like a river, making a dreadful sound. It spread over the land, and destroyed several villages. Some of the inhabitants fled before it; some were overtaken, and buried beneath the burning mass.

---

Describe the eruption of Mount Etna that Parley saw.

It was an awful sight, and made me shudder to witness it. The mountain continued to smoke for several days, but no more lava flowed from it. These eruptions from Mount Etna have been known frequently to take place during thousands of years.

---

## CHAPTER II.

PARLEY SETS OUT TO RETURN TO AMERICA, BUT IS OVERTAKEN BY A STORM, AND SEIZED BY PIRATES.

OUR ship was soon laden, and, a few weeks after our arrival, we set out on our return to America. It was not more than two days after our departure, when we were visited by a storm. The wind blew very powerfully, and the agitation of the sea was dreadful. Our ship rolled violently, and in a few hours two of our masts were broken off, and fell into the sea. The vessel became nearly unmanageable. She also sprang a leak, that is, a hole was broken in her side; and, though we made the greatest exertion at the pumps, still the water increased very rapidly. Orders were given to lighten the vessel, and a great part of the cargo was immediately thrown overboard.



Night now came on, and the gale increased. Our ship shuddered on the waves, as if terror had seized the very timbers. Our captain, however, was a brave man, and he steadily exerted himself to save the ship. He spoke cheerfully to the men, and assisted them with his own strength. But it was all in vain. The lightning struck the ship, and set the sails on fire. The plashing of the sea soon quenched the flames, but the waves broke over us and swept away the greater part of our men. Out of twenty men, there were but five left in the ship.

For myself, I never expected to see the light of another morning. Yet another morning came; and hope, which lingers to the last, revived. The storm was over. The clouds rolled away, and the sun shone out bright and clear. Our ship, however, was a mere wreck. We could scarcely keep her from sinking, by working at the pumps. The waves also continued to roll very heavily, and they broke over the ship every few minutes.

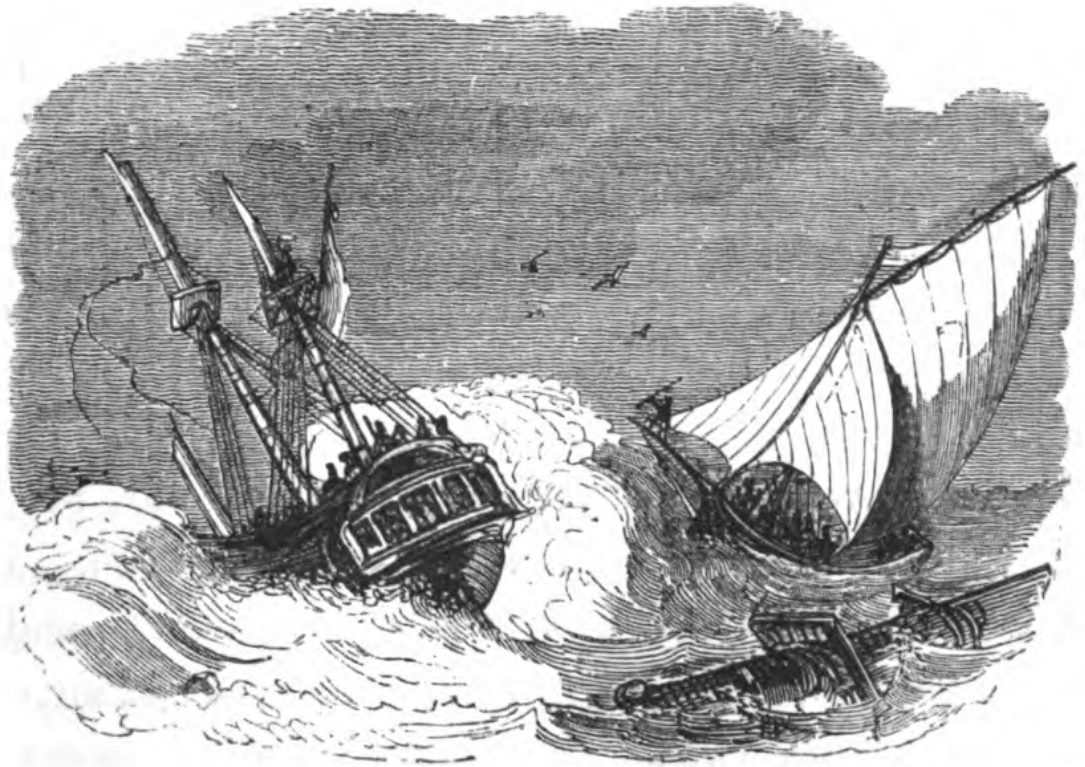
In this desperate situation we saw a vessel approaching us. Yet this vessel was more dreadful to our sight than the troubled sea. We knew it to be a corsair, which is a pirate ship, sent out to rob and plunder other vessels. We had heard many instances of vessels being taken, their

---

What is a corsair?



cargoes seized, and the crews sold as slaves, or shut up in gloomy prisons.



THE GOOD SHIP SWAN ATTACKED BY A CORSAIR.

As the ship that approached us seemed to be small, we determined to make an effort to prevent ourselves from being taken. We armed ourselves with pikes and swords, and stood ready to meet the men from the corsair. Their ship came very close to us, but the sea ran so high, that it was a long time before they ventured to come alongside of us.

---

What had Parley heard about these corsairs?

At length they came close to us, and the two vessels lay side by side. Five or six men armed with swords immediately jumped on board our ship. Three of them were instantly killed by our pikes, and two others were knocked down between the vessels. But other men soon followed from the corsair. We struggled with them for a few moments, but our captain was shot by a pistol in the breast; I was stunned with a blow upon the head, and the remainder of the men, not able to resist, yielded to their fate.

The most valuable part of our cargo was now taken on board the corsair, and we were taken there also. Holes were cut in our ship; she soon filled with water, and the waves yawning widely, received her into the bosom of the sea. The billows whirled and foamed for a moment over the spot, and we saw the ship no more.

## CHAPTER III.

PARLEY IS CARRIED TO TRIPOLI, WHERE HE IS IMPRISONED,  
AND MEETS WITH STRANGE ADVENTURES.

WE soon found out that the corsair which had taken us belonged to Tripoli. Tripoli is a considerable country in the northern part of Africa. The principal town is also called Tripoli. The people are a barbarous and cruel race; and, at the time of which I am speaking, they were engaged in plundering the ships of such other nations as came in their way. They had already taken several American vessels, and we knew that some of our countrymen were shut up in their prisons. We, of course, had no other expectation than to share their fate.

In five days we arrived at the city of Tripoli. We were treated with the greatest cruelty, and our captain suffered exceedingly from his wounds. We were taken

Where were Parley and his companions taken to?

How were they treated?

To what country did the corsair belong, that captured the vessel in which Parley was?

What of Tripoli?

Which is the principal town in the country of Tripoli?

What of the people? In what where they engaged?

ashore, and attended by soldiers, with dark skins and strange dresses, to a large stone building. This building was a castle. We were taken into a dark room in this castle, and here we remained for four days, with no other food than bread, and nothing to drink but water.

We were then taken from our prison, and marched through the town, guarded by soldiers. I remarked, as we went along, that everything had a strange appearance. The inhabitants were as dark as the American Indians, and their dress appeared very singular. The streets were also quite narrow, and the roofs of the houses very flat.

At length we arrived at another prison, and here again we were shut up. I was myself put into a separate room. I had no intercourse with my companions. My room was very dark, the light being only admitted through a long narrow hole in the wall. I had bread and water brought to me once a day, and this was my only subsistence. Here I remained, day after day, and week after week. I knew nothing of the language of the country; and the surly man who attended the prison, seemed to have no more regard for me than if I had been a brute.

How heavy were the hours as they slowly passed away! I had no books to read, and no one to talk to. I knew

---

What does Parley say of the inhabitants of Tripoli?  
What of the streets and houses?



nothing of what was to be my fate, but I had reason to fear that I should be put to death. But so weary was I of confinement, that I almost felt willing to die, if I could once more see the open sky and breathe the free air, if it were only for a few moments.

But weeks passed away, and no change took place in my situation. Day and night came, but all went on in dull and disheartening uniformity. I tried to amuse myself by devising means of escape; but the prison was of stone, and any attempt to force a passage through the walls was useless.

At length a spider crept into the little window of my cell, and began to make a net. I watched him carefully for a long time, and found great amusement in observing him. He soon went away, but the next day he came again; I caught several small flies, and gave them to him. This encouraged him to come, and very soon he took up his abode there.

One night, soon after this, I thought I heard a noise at my window. I listened, and distinctly heard some one there. What this meant I could not imagine. As I had no reason to suppose that any one would attempt to set me free, I fancied that it was evil, rather than good, that was intended.

In the morning I found that my spider was gone, and



his web destroyed. I wept that this only friend of my solitude was thus taken away. The next night I heard again a noise at my window; but I could not conjecture the occasion of it. Again, the third night, I heard it, and imagined that I heard some one whispering to me; but of this I was not certain.



PARLEY IN PRISON CATCHING FLIES FOR A SPIDER.

More than a fortnight had now elapsed. The noise at my window, which had excited some little hope, was heard no more. One night I dreamed that I was released from my imprisonment; that I had crossed the sea; that I had reached my native land; that I was at my home; that ex-

ached m.

clamations of joy at my return filled my ears; and while I imagined that I was kneeling down, to thank God for my deliverance, and happy restoration to my family, I suddenly awoke. For a time I could hardly make out where I was. But at length, fixing my eye upon the dim light that entered my little window, I recollected that I was in prison, and in the power of a cruel and barbarous people.

At this moment I heard a noise at the door, and distinctly heard the key put into the lock, and the bolt slowly and cautiously turned. The heavy iron door was then swung open very silently. I heard no step, but a hand was laid upon me, and some one said in a whisper, "Follow me, and make no noise!"

I was very much surprised, but I did not hesitate instantly to follow. We passed out. The door was locked behind us, and we were on the point of leaving the spot, when a man, who had been sleeping upon the floor, sprang suddenly up, and lifted his sword to strike my conductor. The latter, with the quickness of lightning, struck the man over the head with a stick, and he fell upon the floor. We then went through several narrow passages, and at length came to an open space, with high walls around it.

My companion clambered up this wall by means of a rope ladder, and I followed. We then sprang into the

---

How was Parley rescued from prison?

street. We heard a noise behind us as if my escape was discovered, and an alarm given. We heard several voices, and saw the glancing of lights upon the buildings. My guide quickened his steps, and, turning and winding through the narrow streets, we were soon at a considerable distance from the prison.

At length we came to a house, which we entered. I was taken to a remote part of it, and told by my guide to remain, until I received farther instructions. He then left me. I was in total darkness. Where I was, of course I knew not. Who had delivered me, or for what object I had been taken from the dungeon, I could not guess.

For several hours I remained in total uncertainty. At length a woman, with a light, came to the room where I was. She first spoke to me in the language of the country, but I did not understand her. She then spoke to me in Italian. Of this I knew very little, but I was able to understand, that I must remain quiet, and be assured that no harm was intended me.

In the morning this woman again came to my room, and provided me with some food. She told me that it was necessary for my own safety, and that of my deliverer, that I should remain in my room, and by no means attempt to leave it, as in a few days he would return and explain all to me. In the mean time she said she

would do all in her power to make my time pass agreeably. I thought it best to comply with these directions. My female attendant provided me with food, and gave me a good deal of her company. She behaved in a kind, yet respectful manner, and seemed to be anxious in every way to make my situation agreeable. I was soon able to understand a good deal of her conversation, and I learned from her many things respecting the country, and the people, where I was.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### A SHORT DESCRIPTION OF AFRICA.

I WILL tell you something about the country I was in. The shape of Africa, as you may see by the map, is somewhat like that of a leg of mutton. The southern point, which is called the Cape of Good Hope, forms the small part towards the knuckle. At the north end you will find, on the map the names of several places, as Tripoli, Tunis, Algiers, and Morocco. These countries pass under the general name of Barbary.

---

What is the shape of Africa? Where is the Cape of Good Hope? In what part of Africa are the Barbary States? What countries are included in Barbary?



Africa is an immense region of the Eastern Continent, which is separated from America, or the Western Continent, by the Atlantic Ocean. From the northern to the southern extremity, it is five thousand miles; and it is four thousand six hundred miles wide at the widest part. It contains probably sixty millions of inhabitants. These inhabitants consist chiefly of two races of men, Arabs and Negroes. These races have mixed together, and produced others, partly Arab and partly Negro. They pass under different names, and are divided into a multitude of different tribes and nations.

The inhabitants of Barbary are chiefly Moors, who are nearly the same as Arabs. Their skin is dark, like that of the American Indians. They have a great many negro slaves, who are brought from the central parts of Africa.

Barbary is divided into four states or kingdoms: Tunis, Tripoli, Algiers, and Morocco. Each of these states has a capital, or large city, of the same name as the country. The

---

What separates Africa from America? What is the length of Africa from north to south? What the width from east to west? What the number of inhabitants? Of what two races do the inhabitants of Africa principally consist? What are the inhabitants of Barbary? Describe the Moors of Barbary.



people are Mahometans. They are great enemies to the Christians; and, at the time I was there, it was a part of their regular business to send out vessels upon the sea, to capture the ships belonging to Christian countries.

South of Barbary there is an immense desert, two thousand five hundred miles in length from east to west, and seven hundred miles in width from north to south. People can only cross it by means of camels. It is very dangerous to travel over this desert; for sometimes the wind raises vast clouds of sand, which bury unfortunate travellers beneath them. Beside this, there are many tribes of Arabs, who wander over the desert, and attack and rob everybody they meet. Thinly scattered in this desert are isolated fertile spots, which are called oases.

South of this great desert, which is called Sahara, there are several nations of negroes, who inhabit a fertile country. Captain Clapperton, who made some discoveries in this part of Africa, visited the sultans or kings of several of these savage tribes. In the course of his journey he came to two

---

Which is the capital of Morocco? Of Algiers? Of Tunis? Of Tripoli? What of the people? What was a part of the business of the people of Barbary when Parley was there? What of the great desert of Africa? What tribes wander over the desert? What nations south of the great desert?

villages, which were full of blacksmiths' shops, with several forges in each. They get their iron ore from the hills, and smelt it on the spot where it is dug. He was then on the high road to Koalfu, a great market town and the capital of Nyffé. The country is well cultivated with corn, yams, and cotton. The ant-hills were the highest



ARABS IN THE DESERT.

Captain Clapperton had ever seen, being from fifteen to twenty feet high, and resembling, he says, "so many gothic cathedrals in miniature." On the night of this traveller's first arrival at Kaolfu, the new moon was seen, which was

welcomed with a cry of joy. It put an end to the long season of fast, called the Rhamadan; and the next day the town exhibited a scene of general festivity. Every one was dressed in his best, paying and receiving visits, giving and receiving presents, and parading the streets with horns, guitars, and flutes, while little parties of men and women were seen seated under the shade at their doors, or under trees, drinking *booga*, a sort of beer. The women were dressed to the highest of Nyffé perfection, with the wool on their heads dressed, plaited, and dyed with indigo; their eyebrows painted with indigo; the lips stained yellow, and the teeth red. They had their gayest clothes on; and all their finest beads on their necks. Their arms and legs were adorned with bracelets of glass, brass, and silver; and their fingers with rings of brass, pewter, silver, and copper. Some had Spanish dollars soldered on the back of the rings.

You will, perhaps, wonder to hear of a fast among these savages. But you do not, perhaps, yet know, that the Arabs made considerable conquests in Africa, and that they always introduce their own religion among those whom they have subdued. This is the Mahometan faith, which, although it acknowledges Allah as the one true God, is yet mixed with many superstitions, and, as I have before told you, with great hatred to Christians; as they

believe in a false prophet called Mahomet, and consider those who acknowledge Jesus Christ to be the Son of God, as dogs and infidels.

On the western coast of Africa, from the river Senegal, which you will find on the map, to the Cape of Good Hope, there are many tribes of negroes. Here is the coast of Guinea, from which a great many slaves have been taken to America. The trade in slaves is a cruel and ungodly traffic: it is a reproach to all who engage in it.

Toward the Cape of Good Hope are the Hottentots, a race of negroes, of which I shall tell you by and by. At the Cape of Good Hope is a large town called Cape Town, inhabited by English. There are also a number of small English villages near Cape Town.

On the eastern coast of Africa are several tribes of negroes, of which the Caffres are the most remarkable. They are said to be the best formed people in the world. As you proceed north from the land of the Caffres, you

---

Where is the river Senegal? Into what ocean does the Senegal empty? Which way does it run? What of the country between Senegal and the Cape of Good Hope? Where are the Hottentots? What of Cape Town? In which direction is Cape Town from Tripoli? Point your finger toward it. Toward Tripoli. Where are the Caffres? Describe the Caffres.



come to Abyssinia. This is a mountainous country, inhabited by a very singular race of people. The Nile, one of the most celebrated rivers in the world, flows through Abyssinia. It passes through Nubia and Egypt, and enters the Mediterranean Sea at the eastern extremity.

As I have now told you a little about Africa, you will better understand what I am going to relate. I hope you will study the map very carefully, and see where every place is, that I have mentioned.

---

## CHAPTER V.

### DESCRIPTION OF THE CITY OF TRIPOLI.

I MUST now tell you a little more particularly about the city of Tripoli. It is a large city. The houses are

---

Where is Abyssinia? In which direction from Morocco? From the Cape of Good Hope? Describe Abyssinia. What of the Nile? Where is Nubia? Where is Egypt? Which way is Egypt from Tripoli? From the mouth of the Senegal? From the Cape of Good Hope? How large is the city of Tripoli?



square, and but one story high. The roofs are so flat, that the people frequently walk upon them. The streets are narrow, crooked, and sandy. Almost all heavy articles are carried from one place to another on the backs of camels, which raise a great dust as they go along the streets.

The city is surrounded by strong walls, with ramparts for defending it against the attacks of soldiers. It has two gates, by which the people go in and out of the city. One is north, toward the sea ; the other south, toward the country.

At the east end of the city is the castle, in which the bashaw lives. The bashaw is a sort of king, and rules over the people. His dominions are very extensive, and include Fezzan, which is a country several hundred miles to the south. It is situated in the middle of the great desert.

The bashaw is generally a cruel man, and does what he pleases to the people. His castle is surrounded by a strong wall, forty feet high. He is very much afraid of

---

Describe the houses. The streets. How are goods carried from one place to another? Describe the walls round Tripoli. Describe the gates of Tripoli. What of the castle? What of the bashaw? What of Fezzan?

being killed by some of his people. He has a great many wives, who live in a particular part of the castle. They are very richly dressed with jewels and gold and silver ornaments, and are covered with perfumes. They are, however, shut up very close, and are no better than prisoners.

I have told you before, that the principal part of the people are Moors. These people do not wear hats, but large turbans like the Turks; they do not wear coats, but a large loose garment fastened about the waist; they also wear large trousers, and yellow boots. The women wrap themselves up in a cloth called a barracan, which covers the whole person. This they hold so close over their heads as to conceal their faces, which it is not there thought modest to expose to view.

The climate here is exceedingly hot in summer. In autumn there are heavy rains, which continue for several days and nights. These rains after a short time stop suddenly, and not a drop of water then falls for a number of months.

The people are Mahometans. And, as I have said before, they hate Christians.

---

What of the bashaw's wives? Describe the dress of the men in Tripoli. The dress of the women. What of the climate?

In Tripoli there are a great many Jews. As the Moors are very indolent, the Jews do a great part of the business of the place. They are, however, treated with the greatest contempt by the Moors. A Moor will often



A MOOR OF TRIPOLI ILL-USING A JEW.

spit upon a Jew, and pull his beard, and the poor Jew has only to submit. The Christians are also sometimes treated with great cruelty.

---

What of the Jews in Tripoli ?  
How are Christians often treated ?

It has been said that there is mercy for man and for beast in God's dealings with the world, but that man has no mercy for man. In many instances the saying is too true; this is a sad reproach.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### ACCOUNT OF ALGIERS, MOROCCO, AND TUNIS.

HAVING told you about Tripoli, I will now tell you about Algiers. Algiers is an extensive country, and contains many inhabitants. It was formerly under the government of a Dey, who resided at the city of Algiers, which is the largest town. The dey was very much like the bashaw of Tripoli, and lived in a similar manner. The climate is, in most places, so moderate, that a constant verdure is enjoyed, the leaves of the trees being neither parched by heat in summer, nor nipped by the winter's cold.

The city of Algiers is large. It is situated opposite

---

By whom is Algiers governed?

What can you tell of the dey of Algiers?



to Minorca, an island in the Mediterranean. It is built on the declivity of a hill by the sea-side, in the form of an amphitheatre, and the houses, rising gradually above each other, make a fine appearance from the sea. The inhabitants and houses resemble those of Tripoli. The former are, however, less barbarous, and the latter handsomer and more convenient. The roofs of the houses are flat, and communicate with each other, so that a person may walk the whole length of the streets, on the tops of the houses. Many of the people have little gardens on their houses. The houses are white-washed, and, being situated on the slope of a hill, the city at a distance looks like the sail of a great ship.

Algiers had, for ages, braved the resentment of some of the highest powers of Europe, being notorious for its piracies, which were the chief support of its native inhabitants. Various attempts had indeed been made to bring the Algerines to submit to the laws of civilised nations, but without success. At length, Great Britain interposed. The appearance of her fleet alarmed the dey, and he consented to put an end to all piracy. But he soon violated the treaty; in consequence of which, Lord Exmouth sailed

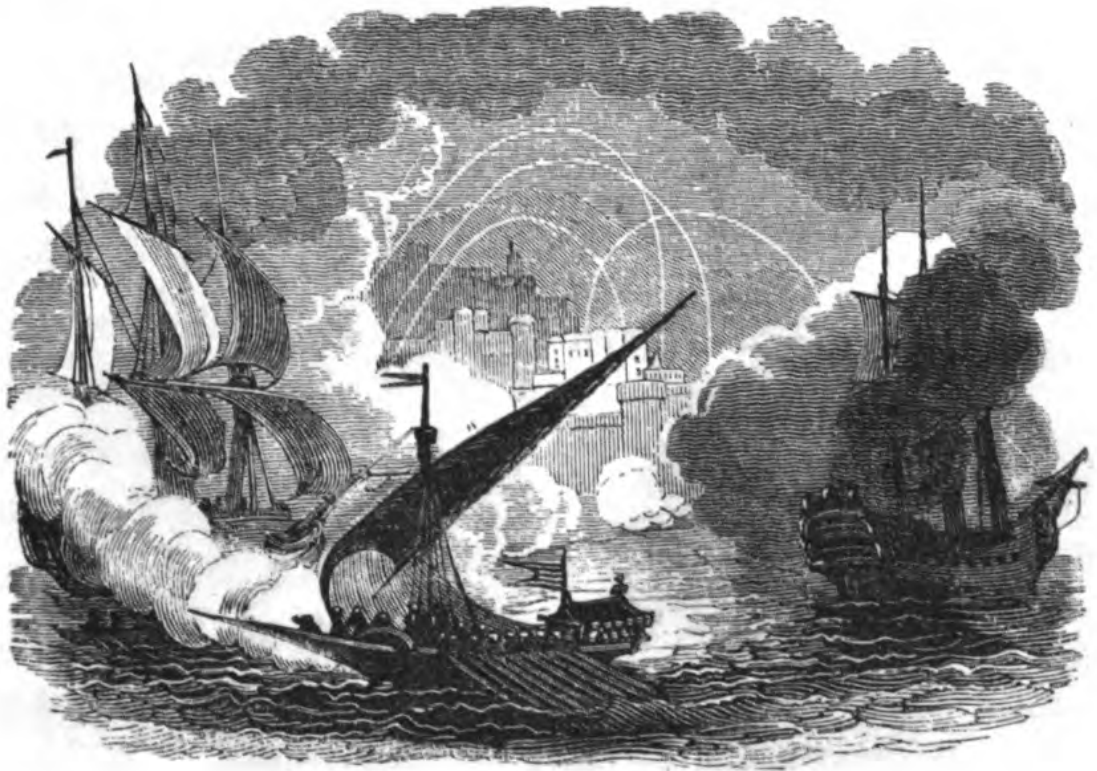
---

What of the city of Algiers?

What of the inhabitants of Algiers? Of the houses?



with a larger fleet, and, after a desperate struggle, on the 27th of August, 1816, totally destroyed the Algerine fleet, and the batteries protecting the harbour. Since then the French have conquered Algiers, but it has not proved of much use to them.



LORD EXMOUTH'S FLEET DESTROYING THE ALGERINE BATTERIES.

Morocco is a very extensive country, governed by an emperor, whose capital is the city of Morocco. This city is situated in a fruitful plain, and surrounded by delightful

---

How is Morocco governed?

groves of lofty palms. The country produces oranges, figs, melons, apricots, peaches, grapes, pears, dates, plums, and pomegranates. There is also a profusion of the most fragrant and beautiful flowers. Morocco is encircled by very strong walls for defence. The emperor's palace is a



MOSQUE, AND MAHOMETANS AT PRAYER.

splendid edifice. The city abounds with mosques. These are places where the Mahometans worship. Near the city

---

Where does the emperor live?

What of the productions of Morocco?

Describe the city of Morocco. What are mosques?

is a range of lofty mountains, the tops of which are always covered with snow, and which are so high that some say they can be seen at sea almost two hundred miles off. They appear to be not more than four or five miles from the city; but they are, in reality, at a distance of between thirty and forty miles. The ancients called these mountains Atlas, and supposed them to be the highest in the world. But there are mountains in India and Thibet which rise much higher. These mountains are inhabited by a people called Berbers, who speak a language quite different from that of the Moors and Arabs. They are a hardy race of shepherds and herdsmen; and in the winter lodge themselves, and their cattle, in caves, keeping all warm by great fires. In the summer they live in huts.

There are several other towns in the kingdom of Morocco. Of these, Fez is the most considerable. The buildings of this city are the most splendid in Barbary. It has many mosques, some of which are magnificent. The gardens abound in all kinds of delicious fruits. Roses and other fragrant flowers are so abundant, as to perfume the air to a great distance.

Tunis is the smallest of the four Barbary states. The principal city is Tunis. The country is governed by a bey,

---

What mountains near the city of Morocco?    What of Fez?

who resides in the city of Tunis. Near this city are the remains of ancient Carthage. More than two thousand years ago, Carthage was very powerful, and sent an army against Rome, under the celebrated Hannibal. It was built on three hills, and it was said to be twenty-three miles in circumference; but a modern calculation supposes it to have occupied only half of the peninsula, which is thirty miles round. It contained seven hundred thousand inhabitants, and was defended by three strong walls, which encircled it. This city, which flourished seven hundred years, was, at last, set on fire by the Romans, and burnt to the ground. It continued to burn incessantly for seventeen days. Of this mighty city nothing remains but the cisterns, of which there are two public sets, and a number of separate houses. One of the sets, destined for the reservoir of the great aqueduct, consisted of more than twenty cisterns, each a hundred feet long, and thirty broad. From this reservoir the great aqueduct extended to Zungiva, a distance of fifty miles. The arches in many places remain, and the whole course may be traced.

I have now told you of the four Barbary states. The climate is, on the whole, delightful, and the land is in

---

What of Tunis? How is it governed?

Where does the bey reside? What of ancient Carthage?



general, very fertile. The most delicious fruits, the most fragrant and beautiful flowers, abound in this country. Nature has done everything to make it one of the most charming portions of the globe; but the inhabitants are, for the most part, savage and uncivilised.

At the time I was in Tripoli, which is almost thirty years ago, these Barbary states were subject to the sultan of Turkey; but, since that time, they have become independent. They were then renowned all over the world for their piracies. Their corsairs were constantly cruising upon the Mediterranean Sea, and they took possession of every ship they could capture.

Since that time, as I before told you, these piracies have been stopped; but the people remain nearly in the same condition; they have been but little improved.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### PARLEY FINDS OUT HIS DELIVERER, AND RECOGNISES AN OLD ACQUAINTANCE.

By this time, I suppose, you may wish to know the remainder of my own story. I hope the preceding descrip-

---

What of the climate of Barbary?



tion of Barbary will not be thought useless, for it is, in some degree, necessary, in order to make the narrative of my adventures in Africa understood.

I had now remained more than two months shut up in the house which I have before mentioned. I had, as yet, seen nothing of the man who rescued me from prison. The woman who attended me would give me no hint, which in the least satisfied my curiosity to know who had thus interposed in my behalf. In truth, I was totally at a loss to conceive who it might be, or what motive had led the individual to engage in an enterprise of so much hazard.

At length the time came when my doubts were to be satisfied. I was one night awakened from my sleep by a man wrapped in a cloak, who told me to dress myself immediately, and prepare to accompany him. This I did, and followed him into the street. We wound through the narrow crooked avenues until we came to one of the gates of the city. Here my conductor had some conversation with the keeper of the gate. After awhile, we were proceeding onwards in silence when my companion made a flash in the pan with his pistol, and in a few minutes a boat came stealing towards us upon the water. This we entered, and, turning our backs upon the city, rowed out into the harbour.

We had four oars-men, and we slid over the water with

great swiftness. We proceeded in perfect silence for about three miles, and then approached a small schooner



LEO GIVING THE SIGNAL FOR A BOAT.

which seemed to be waiting for us. This we entered. The sails were hoisted, and we put to sea. The night was clear, but the wind blew very fresh. The schooner was a fast sailer, and she seemed to glide over the waters, as a bird sails on the air.

At length the morning came. Nothing had been said to me, which enabled me to conjecture who my companions were. I had lain down on the deck of the vessel, and had

fallen asleep. I did not awake till sunrise. As I opened my eyes, they fell upon a man of a very swarthy countenance, whom I instantly recollected to have seen before. But where I had seen him I could not tell. At length he spoke. When I heard his voice, I knew him at once. It was Leo, the Italian captain, whose life I had saved on my voyage to Europe.

The last time I had seen him was in the mountains of Switzerland, as related in my Tales about Europe. He was then at the head of a troop of mountain robbers. Knowing his desperate character, I immediately conjectured he was now engaged in some bad enterprise. I had no fear, however, for myself. He was evidently my deliverer, and I felt sure that his gratitude for my having once saved his life was the cause of his generous conduct towards me now.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE STORY OF A ROBBER.

AFTER a few inquiries, Leo took me into the little cabin of our schooner. It was about fifteen years since I had seen him. He had altered very little. His com-

plexion was remarkably dark ; his eyes very black and piercing ; his hair black, long, and curled over his ears and forehead. His appearance was altogether very striking.

He sat down, and began to speak of our first meeting many years before. After a little while, I asked what had happened to him since I had seen him. He then related his history to me, as follows :—

“ After you saw me at the head of a band of brave fellows in the mountains of Switzerland, I continued to follow the profession of a freebooter. I always conducted my business with humanity. We took away the goods and money of the people who chanced to fall in our way, but we never committed any unnecessary cruelty.

“ Our success was very good for a considerable time ; but, at length, such loud complaints were made to the government, that a body of more than a thousand soldiers was sent to take us. Our band consisted of but fifty men. We did not think it prudent, therefore, to meet these troops in the open field, so we retired to more secret places among the mountains, and hid ourselves during the day, in caves formed amid the rocks. At night we sallied forth, and fell upon such travellers as chance threw in our way.

“ But notwithstanding our utmost care, several of our men were shot, and others taken. A reward of a thousand



dollars was offered for my apprehension. One of my men, tempted by this offer, led the soldiers of the government to the cave where I was concealed. At first I determined to resist, and endeavour to cut my way through them. But a moment's reflection satisfied me of the folly of attempting it. I was taken and carried to Venice.

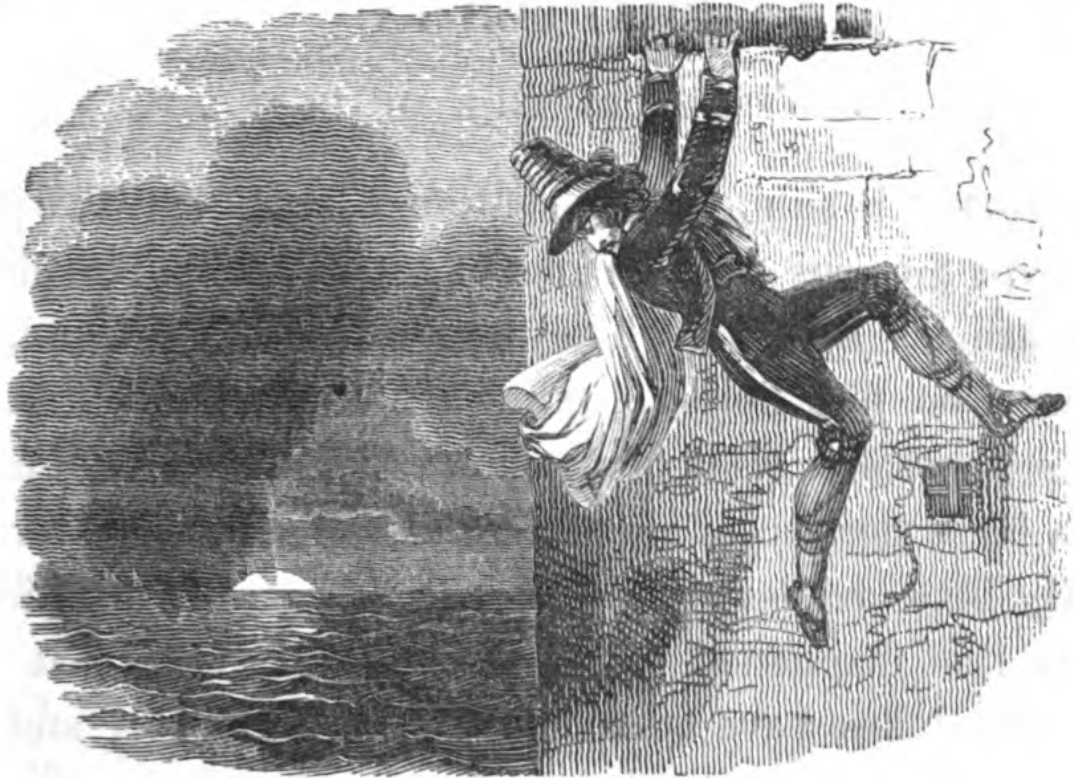
“Here I was tried, and sentenced to be shot. I was confined in a prison on the edge of the sea. I determined, if possible, to make my escape. I made various attempts without success. The day at last drew near which was fixed for my execution. It was now midnight, and at sunrise the next morning, I was to be led out, and shot by a file of soldiers. I sat in my dark cell, reflecting upon my coming fate. I determined to make one effort more for escape. I sprang up, and, laying hold of one of the iron bars that were placed before the window of my dungeon, wrenched it with all my strength. To my surprise it suddenly broke, and I fell backward upon the floor, holding the iron bar in my hands.

“This gave me fresh courage. I seized another bar, and strained with the vigour of a lion. This also yielded, and there was now space for me to creep out through the window.

“I looked down, and although the night was dark, I could see the deep water rippling at the foot of the prison.



I was at least forty feet above the water, but I did not hesitate a moment. I let myself fall from the window,



LEO'S DESPERATE ESCAPE FROM PRISON.

and plunged into the water. Being a good swimmer, I soon rose, and swam to a wharf at a considerable distance. Here I took a boat which I found there, and made my escape.

“I was afraid to show myself in Italy, so I determined to quit my native country. After various adventures, I took passage in a ship which I met with in the Gulf of Venice, and sailed for Egypt. Here I entered the service of the pacha, as a mameluke.”

## CHAPTER IX.

## LEO'S DESCRIPTION OF EGYPT.

“EGYPT is subject to the sultan of Turkey. The pacha of Egypt governs in the name of the sultan. The mamelukes are his soldiers. They are splendidly dressed, and mounted on fine horses. They are daring men, and desperate fighters. Most of them are from foreign countries, and a large portion of them, like myself, are adventurers.”

My little reader should recollect that I am telling of things that happened thirty years ago. Since that time the mamelukes have been expelled from Egypt, and the pacha is now trying to shake off the yoke of the Turkish sultan. Leo proceeded:—

“In this service I remained for a number of years, and was engaged in several battles with Bonaparte. You have no doubt read an account of the invasion of Egypt by the French some years ago. Bonaparte would probably have succeeded in conquering Egypt, had it not been for the English. The French fleet being destroyed

---

To whom is Egypt subject? Who governs Egypt?  
What of the mamelukes?

by the English fleet, under Lord Nelson, Bonaparte left his army, which soon followed him back to France. Thus Egypt was freed from its invaders.

“I continued in the service of the pacha. As you have never been to Egypt, I will describe this remarkable country to you. It is divided into Upper and Lower Egypt. Along the Mediterranean Sea, the country spreads out into a level space of land, on which, as far as the eye can reach, you see nothing but a few date trees, a few palm trees, and groups of huts built of mud.

“Lower Egypt is a very large plain, through which the great river Nile, dividing itself into several branches, flows to the sea; and every year the river overflows, and covers this plain, which makes it very fertile, as a rich mud is left by the waters. This plain was formerly wider than it is now, some of the arms of the river having become dry. It was then of a triangular shape; and was called the Delta, from a letter of the Greek alphabet shaped like a triangle. The natives fancy the shape is more like a pear, and call it Rif, or Errif, meaning the pear-shaped land. Nearly one half of Egypt is flooded

---

How is Egypt divided? Describe that part of Egypt that lies along the Mediterranean Sea. What of the Nile? What part of Egypt is called the Delta?

every year by the Nile; and the lands which the inundation reaches, though they have borne one crop, and frequently two, year after year, without intermission for more than three thousand years, still retain their ancient fertility as in the time of Moses, without any perceptible impoverishment, and without tillage. And, what is very wonderful, as rain scarcely ever falls in Egypt, the rise of the river, upon which the fertility of the soil wholly depends, is occasioned entirely by rains which fall in countries nearly two thousand miles distant; and yet it always takes place at exactly the same time, and generally reaches the same height.

“In Lower Egypt, there are several great cities. Alexandria was built more than two thousand years ago, by a celebrated conqueror of ancient Greece, called Alexander. This place abounds in the most astonishing remains of its former greatness. For the space of six miles around the present town, which is much smaller than the ancient city, nothing is to be seen but fragments of stone which belonged to the ancient edifices. There are heaps, sometimes piled as high as a house, of pillars, columns, and obelisks. Many of these are beautifully carved. One obelisk, cut out of a solid piece of stone, measuring seventy

---

What of Alexandria?



feet in length, and covered with sculptured figures, called hieroglyphics, was called Cleopatra's Needle, after Cleopatra, a very celebrated and beautiful queen of ancient Egypt. Hieroglyphics formed the ancient written language of Egypt.

“Near this city are several remarkable burying places, called catacombs. In these catacombs are found, at this day, the bodies of persons who were buried two or three thousand years ago. These are called mummies; and, having been embalmed, they still nearly retain the complete form and appearance of the persons when living.

“Cairo is another very remarkable city in Lower Egypt. The streets are crooked, and crowded with men, horses, camels, asses, and dogs. These are continually bustling through the town, and raise an almost constant cloud of dust. Cairo is the largest city in Africa, and contains more inhabitants than Morocco.

“Upper Egypt lies to the south of Lower Egypt. In the midst of a vast sandy plain, on the western side of the Nile, are some of the most remarkable edifices in the world.

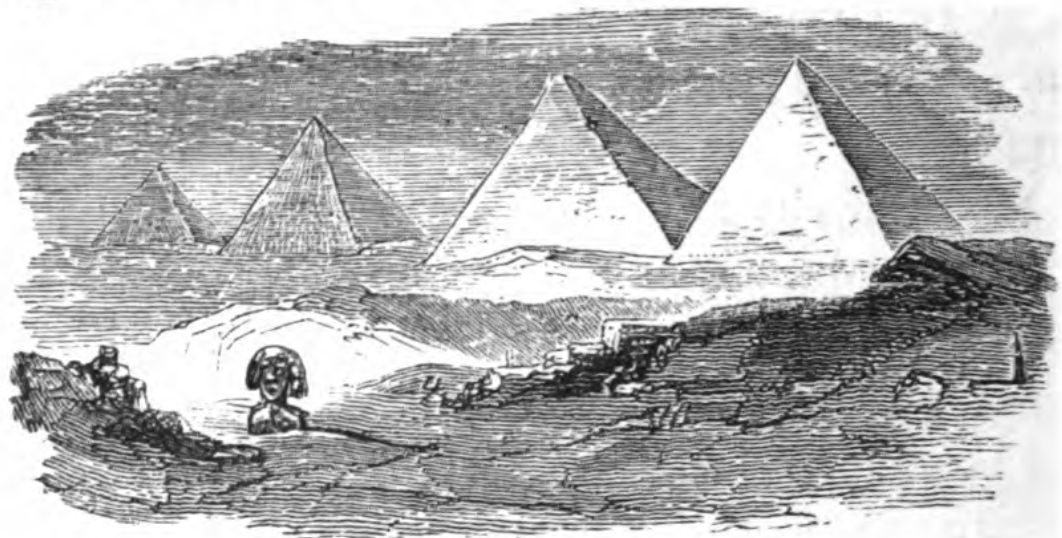
---

What of Cleopatra's Needle?

What of the catacombs? What are found in the catacombs? What of Cairo? What is the largest city in Africa? Where is Upper Egypt?



These are the Pyramids. There are a number of them, but the largest is near five hundred feet in height.



THE SPHINX, AND PYRAMIDS OF EGYPT.

“When, and for what object, these structures were built, it is impossible to tell. Some have conjectured that they were erected for some astronomical purpose; others have supposed them to be immense temples, or fire-altars, raised to the God of Day, or rather the Father of the Sun, who shines night and day. One learned author says, ‘The Pyramids, called in the Coptic language the Sunbeams, were sepulchral monuments.’ Ancient authors, who lived two thousand years ago, speak of them as then the wonders of the age.

---

What can you tell of the Pyramids? How high is the largest Pyramid? When were these Pyramids probably erected? For what object are they supposed to have been built?

“They were as ignorant as we are of the origin of these Pyramids. It is probable that they are the burial places of some of the ancient kings of Egypt, and perhaps were erected even before the time of Pharaoh, who is spoken of in the Bible.

“It has been supposed that the Israelites, during their bondage in Egypt, were occupied in rearing some of these vast structures.

“The Pyramids of Djizeh, or Ghizeh, are not above ten miles distant from Cairo, but, when the waters of the Nile are at their height, it is necessary to take a more circuitous route, and the distance is not less than twenty miles. The journey, however, is described as a most agreeable one, leading at times through woods of palm and date trees, or over barren and sandy tracts. These pyramids, which are the largest and most remarkable of this stupendous class of monuments, stand upon a bed of rock one hundred and fifty feet above the desert, which is one reason of their being seen at so great a distance. The largest of these three is a square of seven hundred and forty-six feet, and its perpendicular height, as I before told you, is not much less than five hundred feet, being twenty-four feet higher than St. Peter's, Rome, and one hundred and seventeen feet higher than St. Paul's, London! It consists of two hundred and six tiers of different dimensions, varying from four feet in

height to one foot, the square of each tier being smaller than the one below, so as to leave the space of two or three feet all around, forming what are called the steps. Each step is from a foot to a foot and a half in breadth, and the average height is about two feet and a quarter, so that the ascent is easy, and accompanied with a feeling of perfect security. Towards the middle the steps are much broken, but the courses remain in complete preservation. It is said that one hundred thousand men were employed for twenty years in raising this empty sepulchre.

“The inside of this wonderful pile is quite as amazing as its outward appearance. The entrance is on the north side upon the sixteenth step; and it can be reached only by ascending over a heap of stones and rubbish that have fallen from the pyramid, or been thrown down in the attempt to force an entrance. A small narrow passage, at first, descends at a gentle slope for nearly a hundred feet. It then turns off to the right, and winds upwards by a forced way for a considerable time, till it leads to a steep ascent of eight or nine feet. Having gained this, the traveller finds himself again in the natural passage, which is about five feet high and a hundred feet long, forming a continual ascent till he reaches a sort of landing-place. Proceeding straight onward along a low narrow passage, you come to a chamber about twelve feet high, which has been named the Queen's Cham-

ber. There is a small recess in the north-east corner, which those who name this the queen's chamber might have called her dressing-room. Neither the dressing-room nor the chamber is lined with granite, as some of the other apartments are : both are quite empty, and the use for which they were intended is unknown.

“ Still further south, in Upper Egypt, and towards Nubia, the Nile flows through a narrow valley between two ranges of mountains. In this valley are many wonderful remains of antiquity. The most remarkable of these are the ruins of Thebes. This city must have been more magnificent, by far, than any city now on the earth. Its ruins are scattered on both sides of the Nile, and cover a surface of nearly thirty miles in extent. Here stand the ruins of the great temple of Carnac. Part of the sculpture looks as fresh as if it were cut only yesterday with the chisel. The ground is covered with columns of immense magnitude, statues, rows of obelisks, sphinxes, and other works, which fill the mind with astonishment. It is impossible to convey any idea of these magnificent remains.

“ This great city was of very ancient date. It is mentioned by authors who wrote more than two thousand years ago, as exhibiting the same spectacle then as now. Still

---

What is evident from the splendid ruins that now exist in Egypt ?



farther south, towards Nubia, there are other very remarkable remains of antiquity. It is evident, that in the earliest ages, Egypt has been filled with people, who lived in splendid cities, who possessed a great deal of learning, and had the knowledge of many arts which are now lost."

When we see buildings in ruin and desolation, built with massy stones, as though they were intended to bid defiance to time, well may we reflect on our latter end. A few more days or years, and our bodies will be mouldering in dust ; happy for us, if then, our spirits rest in heaven.

---

## CHAPTER X.

### LEO FINISHES HIS STORY.

"BUT I am forgetting to tell you my own adventures. Somewhat more than two years since, there came to Egypt a man of the name of Hamet Bashaw. He is the second son of the late bashaw of Tripoli. The present bashaw, whose name is Joseph, caused his father and eldest brother to be put to death, and thus became bashaw himself. Hamet, being older than Joseph, had a right to succeed his father. To prevent his doing so, Joseph endeavoured to take his life. Hamet heard of his intentions, and fled



to Egypt. He was kindly received, and some schemes have been set on foot, to dethrone his brother Joseph and place Hamet at the head of the government of Tripoli.

“About six months since, I came secretly to Tripoli, as the agent of Hamet, to promote these schemes. Appearing to have come on private business, I have had free access to all parts of the city, and nobody has suspected my motive. When you were brought on shore from your ship, I happened to be on the wharf, and saw you. I knew you instantly, and determined, if possible, to liberate you. I therefore took the greatest pains to find out the place of your confinement, and ascertain the means of setting you free.

“I at length contrived to get over the walls of the prison, by a ladder of ropes, and three nights in succession I went to your narrow window, to contrive the means of your escape. Finding that nothing could be done in this way, I one night took advantage of the gaoler's being asleep, turned the key, and liberated you, as you remember. I then placed you under the care of a woman from my own country, in whom I could place confidence.

“After this I was absent nearly two months, engaged in pursuing the object which brought me to Tripoli. My business being completed, I took you from your place of concealment, and brought you on board this vessel, which

was waiting for me. I am now sailing for Egypt, and if this fair wind continues, we shall be there in four days. When you arrive there, you can take passage in some vessel, and return to your own country."

---

## CHAPTER XI.

### PARLEY TELLS HOW DECATUR AND TWENTY AMERICANS BURNT THE PHILADELPHIA.

WE continued to sail on our voyage with a fair wind. During the passage, Leo told me of some things which interested me very much. Before I tell them to you, I must go back, and relate some facts, that it is necessary you should first understand.

I have told you that the people of Barbary sent out many ships to seize upon the ships of other nations. Now, many of the American vessels went to trade in the Mediterranean Sea, and several of them were taken by these pirates. The crews were seized, put in prison, and treated with the greatest cruelty. Some of them were reduced to slavery, and made to labour very hard.

The sufferings of these unhappy Americans induced

their government to send out some ships of war, under the command of Commodore Preble, not only to protect their ships in the Mediterranean Sea, but to assist in effecting the liberation of their countrymen who were in captivity. This took place in 1803.

One of the American ships of war was called the Philadelphia, and commanded by Captain Bainbridge. One day, this ship was chasing a corsair into the harbour of Tripoli, when unfortunately she struck the ground, and could not move. Unable to escape, the vessel fell a prey to the Tripolitans. The crew were all taken, and shut up in prison. The vessel remained in the hands of its captors.

The Tripolitans soon got the Philadelphia afloat, and intended to make use of her to carry on the war against the American ships. There was a young man by the name of Decatur among the Americans, under the command of Commodore Preble. He commanded a small ship called the Enterprise, and was a very daring young officer. He proposed to Commodore Preble to go and set the Phila-

---

Who was sent to the Mediterranean Sea, thirty-five years ago, with a squadron of American ships of war under his command?

For what was Commodore Preble sent with these ships to the Mediterranean?

What happened to the Philadelphia?

delphia on fire, and thus prevent her being useful to the Tripolitans.

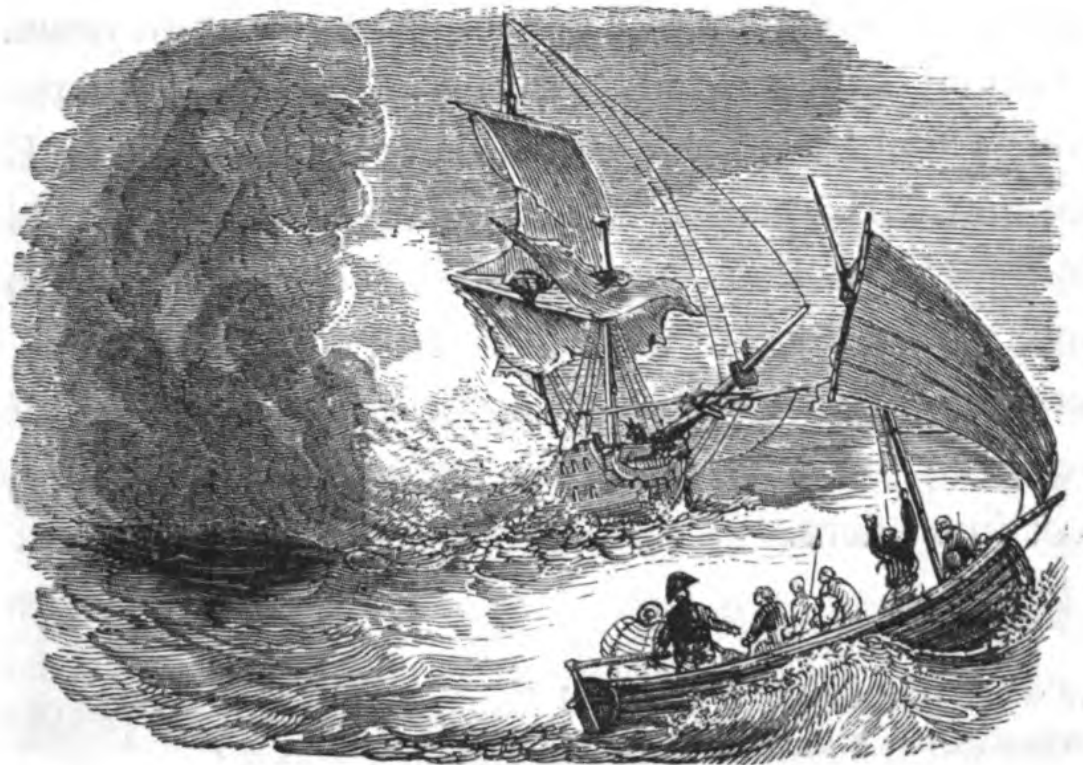
This plan was approved of by Commodore Preble. So Decatur waited till it was night, and then took with him twenty men, and concealed them in the bottom of a small vessel, and sailed towards the Philadelphia. The Tripolitans on board this ship saw the little vessel approaching, but supposing it belonged to their own people, and apprehending no danger, they allowed it to come up close to them.

Suddenly, Decatur and his twenty men leaped upon the deck. There were fifty Tripolitans on board the Philadelphia. The men closed upon each other, and a deadly struggle followed. The astonished Tripolitans fought bravely with their sabres. At the first onset, Decatur was disarmed and thrown down. A Tripolitan lifted his sword over him, and was about to strike the fatal blow. At this instant one of Decatur's men saw his danger, and, springing between him and the Tripolitan, received the stroke of the sword on his arm.

Decatur rose, and fought like a lion. He was truly a brave man. His twenty Americans were all brave men. The Tripolitans fell before them like grass before the scythe. Decatur set the vessel on fire, and not one of the fifty Tripolitans ever reached the shore. The flames soon



rose from the ship, and lighted the harbour far and wide. The people from the city looked on, in fear and wonder, and Decatur returned in triumph to his vessel.



DECATUR SETS THE SHIP PHILADELPHIA ON FIRE.

These were brave deeds, but many of the poor Americans were still in slavery. The bashaw of Tripoli was so angry because the Philadelphia was burnt, that he was still more cruel to the American prisoners in his power. The

---

Will you tell how Decatur caused the Philadelphia to be burnt?



sufferings of these unhappy men were soon known in America. The subject was a matter of universal interest. The American government was not idle. They sent General Eaton to the Mediterranean, as an agent to assist in obtaining the freedom of their imprisoned countrymen.

General Eaton at length heard of the situation of Hamet, whom I have mentioned before. He went to Egypt to see him. He proposed to Hamet to assist him in dethroning his brother, provided Hamet, on coming to the throne, would liberate the Americans, and be at peace with America. To this Hamet agreed, and General Eaton immediately set about making arrangements to carry the project into effect.

---

For what purpose was General Eaton sent to the Mediterranean?  
Where did General Eaton meet Hamet Bashaw?  
What agreement did he make with Hamet Bashaw?



## CHAPTER XII.

PARLEY ARRIVES IN EGYPT, AND GOES WITH GENERAL  
EATON'S EXPEDITION ACROSS THE DESERT.

It was at this point of time that Leo made his communication to me. He told me that General Eaton was at this moment in Egypt, and that, in a few days, he would set out with a number of soldiers, to make an attack on the dominions of the bashaw of Tripoli. He left me at full liberty, either to return directly to my country, or join General Eaton's expedition. At the same time, he strongly urged me to adopt the latter course. He told me that the bashaw of Tripoli was a cruel man, that he had murdered his own father, that Hamet was, by law, entitled to the throne, and that above all, in joining General Eaton's enterprise, I should assist in liberating the suffering Americans from captivity.

These considerations had some weight with me, but I did not immediately determine to follow Leo's advice. I chose rather to wait till I arrived in Egypt, and then make up my mind what to do.

In a few days we arrived at Alexandria, in Lower

Egypt. On inquiry, I found that General Eaton was actually there, as Leo had said. I also found several American seamen there, who, in the course of a few days, were to start on the proposed expedition. I very soon determined to accompany them. In less than a week we were on our march westward, towards the dominions of the bashaw of Tripoli.

As we were going to travel across a desert, General



MARCH ACROSS THE DESERT.

Eaton hired more than one hundred camels to carry the baggage. There were very few Americans engaged in the expedition. The whole number of persons was about four hundred. Some of them were on horseback, but the

greater part were on foot. There were a good many Arabs and Moors, headed by Hamet Bashaw.

We marched two hundred miles over an uneven plain, consisting of barren hills of sand. Over this whole distance we met with not one human habitation. At length we came across some tribes of Arabs. The people were living in tents, and had some horses and cattle. We were the first Christians they had ever seen. They laughed heartily at our dress, which appeared to them very ridiculous.

These Arabs had very dark complexions, and wore turbans like the Turks. They were all Mahometans, and, like other people of this religion, thought Christians very much worse than themselves. They believe that Christians will be all punished in another world, by being kept for ages in a dreadful fire. They were very anxious that I should become a Mahometan. They seemed perfectly sincere, and no doubt really believed that, if I remained a Christian, I should suffer great torments in a future state.

I saw among these Arabs several ostriches, which they had caught when young, and rendered nearly tame.

---

How many persons were engaged in General Eaton's expedition?  
Of whom did these four hundred persons consist?

Will you describe the people that Parley says they met with after travelling two hundred miles?

What can you tell about the ostrich?



Ostriches are the largest birds in the world. They are only found in Africa, and a small part of Asia. They lay their eggs in the sand, and the heat of the sun is so great, that the bird is only obliged to sit on them during the night to hatch them. These birds cannot fly, but they will run as fast as a horse, or faster.

The Arabs had also beautiful antelopes, that resemble small deer. These creatures are very timid, and run with great swiftness. Many of them are caught by the panthers and lions, who lie concealed, and spring suddenly upon them, as cats do upon mice.

As we proceeded on our journey, we met with almost constant difficulties. Sometimes the weather was exceedingly hot, and we were all drooping with fatigue and thirst. Sometimes quarrels took place among the soldiers, and sometimes Hamet Bashaw, and his men, became disheartened, and proposed to return. But General Eaton met these difficulties with the greatest courage. He cheered the troops, he inspired Hamet with confidence, and triumphed over every obstacle.

But at length we were short of provision. We were in a wide desert that produced scarcely anything. We were surrounded by no other people than the wandering tribes of Arabs, who kept out of sight during the day, but

---

What can you tell about antelopes ?



stole into our camp at night, and robbed us of our horses. Our men were now dispersed in every direction to look for herbs and roots for food.

I went, like the rest, to find something to eat. I had gone to a considerable distance from my companions, when I happened to see between the hills a small low spot, where some shrubs were growing. They were in a little valley, in which there was a pond. The place was quite green, and looked very beautiful, all around it being quite desolate and barren. A spot like this in a desert is called an oasis.

Well, I no sooner saw this spot, than I ran to it, ex-



PARLEY ATTACKED BY ARABS IN THE DESERT.

pecting to find something there that would answer for

food. What was my surprise, to see four men start, with the suddenness of beasts of prey, from the bushes, and surround me ! I saw at once they were Arabs ; and, being totally unarmed, I had no means of defending myself. They instantly fell upon me, and began to strip me of my clothes with surprising quickness. They took off my hat and coat, and were proceeding to rob me of my other garments, when three or four of our horsemen accidentally appeared.

They were coming directly towards us. The Arabs were alarmed, and, throwing my hat and coat upon the ground, they left me, and sprang to their horses, which were at a little distance among the shrubs. They mounted them at a single leap, and galloped away over the sand hills, disappearing almost as quickly as birds of the air. The swiftness of the horses belonging to these Arabs of the desert is truly surprising.

Notwithstanding all our researches, we were still short of food, and were obliged to kill one of our camels, which we found to be excellent meat. We continued our march, and in two months had proceeded six hundred miles over the desert. We now arrived at a tolerably fruitful country, and soon reached the city of Derne.

---

How long was General Eaton's expedition in crossing the desert ?  
How far across the desert ?

## CHAPTER XIII.

ARRIVAL AT DERNE. THE SIROCCO. A BATTLE, AND  
SOME OTHER THINGS.

DERNE is situated on the sea, and is a large place, nearly equal to Tripoli in size. It belonged to the bashaw of Tripoli, and was governed by a bey. Here General Eaton was joined by several American vessels. An attack upon the city was resolved upon. The vessels were to fire upon the town with their cannon from the water, and General Eaton, with the soldiers, was to attack it by land.

While preparations were making to execute these plans, we were visited by a dreadful hot wind, called the sirocco. This wind filled the air with small sand. The whole sky was almost the colour of copper. The animals were gasping for breath. The leaves, plants, and flowers perished. It was truly dreadful. I was parched with heat, and my skin seemed on fire. This lasted for three

---

In what direction is Derne from Alexandria ?

What can you tell of Derne ?

Describe the sirocco.

days, and then the sirocco ceased. This dreadful wind is common in the deserts of both Africa and Asia, and often takes away the lives of men and beasts.

The preparations being at length completed, the attack on Derne was commenced. The American vessels poured their cannon shot upon the batteries of the enemy, and upon the town. The roar was loud and terrific. Our troops, too, assailed the town on the land side. We were opposed by a large number of Tripolitan soldiers. A fierce battle followed. General Eaton was shot in the wrist, but he seemed to heed it not. He led us on through the thickest of the fight. It was a brave battle. We had some Greeks with us, who fought by our sides, and they fought bravely. The enemy at length gave way; they fled before us, and we entered the town.

Derne was now captured. Joseph Bashaw heard of this event with dread. He feared that his brother Hamet would succeed in driving him from the throne. He desired, therefore, to make peace as soon as possible with the Americans. He sent to Mr. Lear, the American consul, and offered immediately to release the American pri-

---

Describe the attack on Derne.

What effect had the capture of Derne on Joseph Bashaw ?

What did Joseph Bashaw do ?



soners, if General Eaton would cease to assist Hamet Bashaw. Mr. Lear immediately agreed to this. General Eaton was consequently obliged to withdraw his troops from Derne. Soon after this we all sailed for Malta, an island in the Mediterranean Sea.

Poor Hamet Bashaw, thus deserted by his American allies, had no further hopes. He left his cruel brother Joseph to reign, quitted his country, and went to America. General Eaton returned to America also, and after some years he died. He deserves to be remembered as a man of extraordinary courage, energy, and perseverance.

Immediately after the arrangement was made between Mr. Lear and Joseph Bashaw, all the American prisoners in Tripoli were set at liberty. Among these were my companions, who had been captured with me in the Mediterranean. After we were imprisoned in Tripoli, I had known nothing of their fate. How great was my pleasure, on arriving at Malta, to meet them all there! They had suffered a great deal during their imprisonment, but were now very happy in the prospect of returning to their country.

This is the way with us in this world; our wants make

---

What was General Eaton obliged to do in consequence of the arrangement between Mr. Lear and Joseph Bashaw?

What did Hamet Bashaw do? What became of General Eaton?  
For what does General Eaton deserve to be remembered?



us enjoy our comforts the more, and our pains increase our pleasures. When we are famishing with hunger and fainting with thirst, how sweet are a crust and a cup of water! When we have languished for years in captivity, what a delightful thing is liberty!

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

### PARLEY SETS OUT FOR CHINA. SOMETHING ABOUT CAPTAIN RILEY.

A FEW days after I arrived in Malta, a large American ship, called the Kien Long, came to that island. She had been to Smyrna, a town in Asia, on the Mediterranean Sea, to get opium, which is the juice of poppies dried in the sun, and taken to make people sleep. This opium she was going to carry to China, and exchange it for tea, silks, and other goods. While she was at Smyrna, the plague was raging there. The plague is a dreadful disease that prevails in all the large towns in the Mediterranean. Sometimes, many

---

What can you tell of the plague?

thousands of people die of it in a single city, in the course of a few months. Several of the seamen on board the *Kien Long* took the disease at Smyrna, and died there. When she arrived at Malta, she was, therefore, short of men. I was offered the situation of second mate on board of her.

This I accepted; and, instead of setting out for home, as I intended, I started in a few days on a voyage to China. We passed through the Straits of Gibraltar, and stretched to the west along the northern coast of Africa. We soon passed the Canary Isles, and at length came near Cape Blanco, on the western coast of Africa.

It was on the coast near this cape that Captain Riley and his crew were wrecked about ten years afterwards, that is, in 1815. Captain Riley has published an account of his shipwreck, and his sufferings in Africa. In listening to the narrative of those who have passed through trials, we should rather desire to be profited than pleased. The miseries of others should lead us to turn a grateful eye to our own mercies.

---

In what direction did Parley sail after he left the Mediterranean?

What islands did he soon pass?

Where were Captain Riley and his crew wrecked?

In what direction is Cape Blanco from Tripoli?

The Cape of Good Hope from you?

## CHAPTER XV.

PARLEY CONTINUES HIS VOYAGE, AND TELLS ABOUT  
MUNGO PARK, AND OTHER TRAVELLERS INTO  
CENTRAL AFRICA.

It appears that the western coast of Africa, north of Cape Blanco, is thinly inhabited by savage tribes of Arabs, who are ready to plunder such unfortunate seamen as may be wrecked upon the shore. Not satisfied with robbing them of whatever goods they may possess, they make slaves of them, and subject them to the greatest cruelty and hardships.

It appears that the Arabs are kind and hospitable to each other, but towards their enemies they have no mercy. They look upon all people who do not profess the Mahometan religion as wicked outcasts, and fit only to be made slaves of. There are multitudes of these Arabs in the northern, middle, and eastern parts of Africa, and it is a part of their business, and one of their means of subsistence, to attack and carry off people whom they can overcome, and then sell them as slaves.

---

What of the inhabitants of the western coast of Africa, north of Cape Blanco?

What is part of the business of the Arabs?

The Negroes, who are very numerous in the middle parts of Africa, are constantly hunted by these pirates of the land, and many thousands of them are every year torn from their homes, separated from their friends and families, and carried away into distant countries. There, deprived of their liberty, they labour for the luxury and enjoyments of rich persons, who buy them. In a land of exile they die, and never know what becomes of their children or their friends, whether they are living or dead, happy or unhappy. Every one who values freedom ought to cry out with a loud voice against slavery.

But I must now tell you about my voyage. We continued to sail along the coast of Africa till we came near Cape Verd. A little west of Cape Verd, are the Cape Verd Islands. These are sixteen in number, but several of them are only barren rocks. St. Jago is the principal island. A great many vessels come to these islands to get salt, which is formed from sea water dried up by the heat of the sun.

Soon after we passed Cape Verd, we also passed the mouth of the river Gambia. This river you will see laid

---

What of the Negroes?

Where is Cape Verd? What islands near Cape Verd? Describe these islands. For what do vessels visit Cape Verd Islands?



down on the map. It is a large muddy stream, in which there are a great many river horses, or hippopotami, and huge crocodiles. On the banks are thousands of monkeys.



NEGROES KILLING THE CROCODILE.

Many years ago, a famous Scotch traveller went up this river, into the interior of the country, to discover what sort of people lived there. His name was Mungo Park. Before

---

Where is the river Gambia? Describe this river.

What famous traveller went up this river to explore the country about forty years ago?



that time, very little was known of this part of Africa. Many travellers had attempted to explore the country, but they were obliged either to return without success, or were killed before they got back.

Mr. Park found the country to be inhabited by a variety of Negro nations. He had many curious adventures. One day, he went to see the Negro king of Bondou, to whom



MUNGO PARK AND THE KING OF BONDOU.

he gave an umbrella, and several other things, with which the king was very much pleased. He then began to praise

---

Tell me something of Mungo Park's travels.

**T**

Mr. Park's blue coat and bright yellow buttons, and concluded by asking Mr. Park to give it to him, promising to wear it on all public occasions. So Mr. Park took off his coat, and laid it at the feet of the king.

At one time Mr. Park was in great distress in the desert, and sadly cast down, when, turning his eyes towards the sand, he observed a little flower—"Oh," thought he, "if God has taken care of that little flower, he will not let me perish:" he jumped up, and went on his way with fresh spirit.

After remaining a considerable time in these countries, Mr. Park returned to England, and published an account of his travels. About ten years after, he again went up the river Gambia to explore the country. This took place only a few months before my voyage to China. At the very time that I was sailing along the coast, Mr. Park was in the interior of the country, prosecuting his travels.

In this latter expedition he was accompanied by nearly fifty Europeans, several of them soldiers, whose object was to protect and assist him. He pursued nearly the same course as before, but he and his companions were beset with difficulties and dangers on all hands. These they

---

What can you tell of Park's second expedition into the interior of Africa?

encountered with the utmost fortitude, and continued to proceed, till at length all had died by sickness and other causes, but Mr. Park and four others. These reached a town called Boussa, a little further east than Tombuctoo. As they were in a boat proceeding eastward down the river Niger, they were attacked by the natives. They defended themselves with the utmost bravery: for three days they resisted their enemies; but at length, overpowered by numbers, they all perished.

Not one of this whole expedition escaped, to tell their sad story. Their fate was indeed unknown, until about twenty years afterwards, when Captain Clapperton, another English traveller, reached Boussa, and learned the fate of Park and his companions.

I ought to tell you one remark made by Mungo Park, after he had gone through much hardship and danger. He said that, though men had been cruel to him, he had never appealed to a woman without meeting with kindness.

Notwithstanding the ill fate which had attended most of the travellers in Central Africa, still others were found bold enough to venture into these regions. About eight

---

Describe Mungo Park's death. What can you tell of Major Denham and Captain Clapperton's travels?

In which direction is Bornou from Tripoli?

years ago, Major Denham, and Captain Clapperton, whom I have mentioned above, crossed the desert from Tripoli to Bornou. Here they found a large lake called Tchad, upon which there were multitudes of birds, so tame that they would scarcely move out of the way, as Major Denham went near them.

They found Bornou to be a large and powerful kingdom of Negroes, where the horse soldiers cover themselves, in time of battle, with steel shirts, formed of many small links. Captain Clapperton proceeded as far westward as Sackatoo. He found the country through which he passed very populous, and a part of it beautiful and well cultivated. These two travellers returned safely to England, and published a very interesting account of what they saw.

In 1825, this same Captain Clapperton made an expedition into Central Africa, from the western coast. He proceeded from England by water to Badagry, which you will find on the map. Here he landed, and proceeded to Boussa, where, as I told you before, he discovered the fate of Mr. Park. From this place he went to Sackatoo, which

---

What can you tell of Bornou? Where did Captain Clapperton go to? In which direction is Sackatoo from Tripoli?

What other expedition, into Central Africa, was made by Captain Clapperton? At what place did Captain Clapperton die?



he had formerly visited. Here he was taken sick, and died.

Perhaps you are tired of hearing about travellers to central Africa, but I must tell you of one more. This was a Frenchman, named Caillée, who has recently been to Tombuctoo, a large city inhabited by Negroes. You will find it on the map. A great many travellers had before endeavoured to reach this place ; but none has ever succeeded and returned, but M. Caillée. He has published an account of his travels.

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

### SOMETHING ABOUT SIERRA LEONE, LIBERIA, THE IVORY COAST, GOLD COAST, GUINEA, AND THE SLAVE TRADE.

YOU will observe, on the western coast of Africa, a place named Sierra Leone. Here there is a settlement founded by the English. The object of it is, to provide a place where negro slaves, who have obtained their liberty,

---

To what celebrated place in Africa has M. Caillée recently been?

Where is Sierra Leone?

What can you relate of Sierra Leone?



may go and live. More than ten thousand slaves, who have gained their freedom, have been sent to this place. There is a considerable town here called Freetown, in which these Negroes live very comfortably.

A little to the south of Sierra Leone is a settlement called Liberia, established by a benevolent society in America. This, like the settlement at Sierra Leone, is designed for the residence of emancipated slaves and free blacks. It is meant, particularly, as an asylum for Negroes from the United States.

A little further south than Liberia is a part of Africa called the Ivory Coast. In the interior there are vast herds of elephants. These animals are not so large as the elephants in Asia, but they have larger tusks. The tusks of elephants are ivory. The inhabitants bring these tusks to the coast, and sell them to American and European traders, who go there in ships. They carry guns, powder and balls, rum, and trinkets, which they exchange with the Negroes for ivory.

Near the Ivory Coast is the Gold Coast. Gold is

---

Where is Liberia?

What can you relate of Liberia?

What of the Ivory Coast?

What of the Gold Coast?

brought down from the mountains by the rivers, in fine grains. It is washed from the sand with which it is mixed, and taken by the Negroes to the coast. It is exchanged with the traders for the same articles as those received for ivory.

Still further south is Guinea. Here there are various tribes of Negroes, and here the slaves which have been taken to America have been chiefly obtained. The number of slaves that have been taken from this coast and sold in the United States, the West Indies, and South America, must be many hundreds of thousands. England has endeavoured to put a stop to this wicked traffic; but still there are very many vessels of different countries engaged in carrying off the poor inhabitants of these shores, who are forced away and sold, and never see their country more.

It is painful to reflect upon the misery which has flowed from the slave trade, carried on by Christian nations. The Negro kings of Africa, finding that they could obtain guns, powder, rum, and many other articles which they are very fond of, for slaves, have sometimes made slaves of their own people, and more frequently have made war upon neighbouring countries, and made slaves of the inhabitants. These have been sold to the traders. Thus the slave

---

Where is Guinea? Where have the slaves, taken to America, chiefly been obtained?

trade has armed the inhabitants of Africa against each other. Perpetual wars and great bloodshed have been the consequence. Whole tracts of country, once inhabited by multitudes of happy people, are now left desolate, or only peopled by miserable tribes. How much distress has been thus occasioned! How many people have been dragged from their homes, from all that was dear to them, and carried into foreign countries, to labour, to suffer, and to die!

Nor is this all. One of the worst consequences of the slave trade, is, that slavery is become established in several Christian countries. In the southern and south-western parts of the United States there are many slaves; all the hard labour is performed by them. They are owned by white men, who buy and sell them in the same manner as they do horses or other animals.

These slaves are generally treated kindly. Sometimes, indeed, it is otherwise. As there are people among us who cruelly overwork and beat their horses; so, in all slave countries, there are people of bad passions and cruel tempers, who abuse their slaves. But in the United States they are usually well fed and well sheltered.

But still, the evils of slavery, even in America, are very great. Negro children are often taken from their parents, sold, and carried to a distance, where they never see each other again. Husbands are separated from their wives,

and the marriage contract, which religion teaches us should be perpetual, is thus dissolved. It is found that the education of slaves is not safe; for, when they are educated, they soon discover that they are under no obligation to remain in slavery, or serve their masters. Thus ignorance is their lot. They are not looked upon as forming a part



TAKING NEGROES TO MAKE THEM SLAVES.

of the human family, who are to be elevated by education, and rendered happy by moral and intellectual improvement. On the contrary, they are regarded rather as animals, whom, from interest, as well as duty, we should feed and clothe well; not as fellow beings, who have rights



equal to our own—not as immortal beings, who have destinies as high as our own.

There are, no doubt, many kind-hearted people who have slaves. But slavery is a bad system, and always brings great evils along with it. Instead, therefore, of defending slavery, every good person should condemn it, and use his efforts, on all proper occasions, to hasten the time when there shall be no slavery.

There is a common fault in the treatment of Negroes, I think, in those parts of America, even where there are no slaves. We very often hear people speak and act as if they were under no obligation to treat black men with as much kindness, humanity, and charity, as they owe to white people. It is true, the blacks are generally poor, and many of them degraded. But who made them so? The white people. The white people brought them from Africa, their native land, where they might have been happy, to a country where they are always outcasts, and always despised.

Now, those people who treat free Negroes with harshness, unkindness, or inhumanity, are just as much to blame as if they treated white people so. The colour of the skin makes no difference. The obligation is universal, to do to another as you would have another do to you.



## CHAPTER XVII.

PARLEY TELLS OF HIS VOYAGE, AND HOW THEY MET WITH A DREADFUL GALE OF WIND OFF THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

WELL, I must now go to my own story. Our vessel continued on her voyage. We had fine weather, and a fair wind; and, in a few weeks after we set out, we were near the Cape of Good Hope. But as we were turning round that southern point of Africa, to proceed eastward, we were visited by a violent storm. I had been often at sea, and in many gales of wind; but never before did I witness so violent an uproar of the elements as then. The sea did not rise in lofty billows, and sink in deep hollow vales between; but large masses of the sea were lifted upon the wind, and strewed in white foam upon the surface of the deep.

We took in the sails, so as to present to the wind only the naked hull of our ship, with her masts and rigging. But she was driven along as swiftly as if she had had wings. The sea broke over us in a continued sheet, and our vessel leaned over so much as to dip the ends of her spars in the water. Several of the seamen were shaken from the masts into the sea, and disappeared for ever.

It was at once a terrific and sublime scene. The storm

continued for near two days. Every effort was made, by the captain and the sailors, to prevent accident. But suddenly a heavy swell of the sea struck the vessel, and threw her over on her side. It was now a moment of great peril. The captain ordered the masts to be cut away. This was instantly done, and the vessel righted. Again she sat bravely on the water, and contended with the billows. A moment before, we had abandoned all idea of escape, now we were cheered with the hope of safely riding out the gale.

The storm at length abated. The clouds rolled away, the sun shone forth, and a dead calm settled upon the waters. We took advantage of this moment to repair some of the damage done to our vessel. We also rigged up a temporary mast, upon which we hoisted a sail, and when the breeze sprung up, we steered our course for Cape Town, an English settlement at the Cape of Good Hope. In two days we arrived at that place, and here we supplied ourselves with masts, and other necessary articles to put our vessel in complete trim. While at Cape Town, I had an opportunity of learning many things about the southern part of Africa, of which I will tell you presently.

---

Where did the Kien Long meet with a violent storm ?

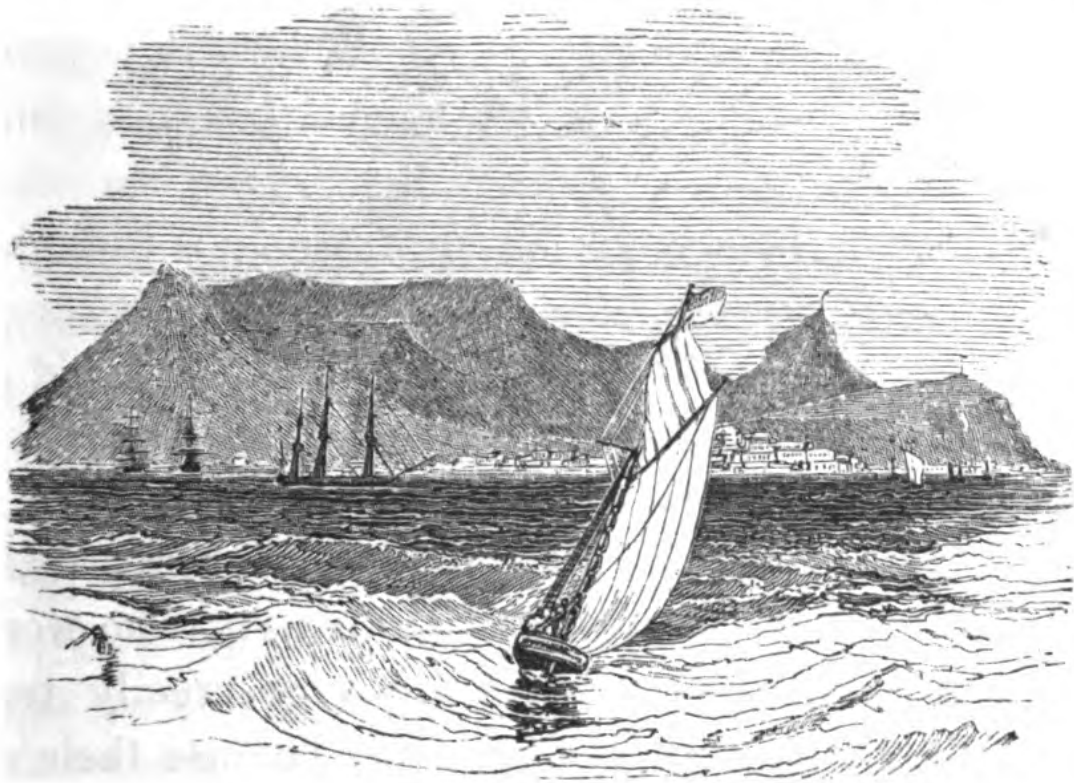
What happened to the ship during the storm ?

Where was the ship taken to refit ?

## CHAPTER XVIII.

PARLEY TELLS ABOUT CAPE COLONY, THE HOTTENTOTS,  
AND VARIOUS WILD ANIMALS. CONCLUSION.

CAPE TOWN was built many years ago by some Dutch settlers. They found the country inhabited by a race of



VIEW OF CAPE TOWN.

tall, slender Negroes, of a very gentle temper, called Hottentots. They took away the lands of these people without ceremony, made slaves of some of the inhabitants, and drove the rest back into the country.

---

By whom was Cape Town first settled?

The colony continued to increase, and after awhile it fell into the hands of the English, who have ever since kept



A HOTTENTOT, OR CAPE NEGRO.

possession of it. Cape Town is rather a large town, with about twenty thousand inhabitants. A great many of them, however, are Negroes and Hottentots, who were till lately slaves, some of whom were very cruelly treated. Most of the slaves were Mahometans, because their selfish masters were not willing to have them taught Christianity. Slavery, however, is now abolished at Cape Colony, as well as in all the other British possessions.

---

How did the Dutch settlers treat the Hottentots?  
To what nation does Cape Colony now belong?  
What of Cape Town?



Near Cape Town there is a very remarkable mountain called Table Mountain. It is perfectly flat at the top, like a table, and one of its sides is cut down in such a manner as to form an almost perpendicular face. This mountain is four thousand feet high.

To the north of Cape Colony, the country is inhabited by various tribes of Hottentots. Some of them are wild and savage; but for the most part they are mild, gentle, and kind-hearted.

There are many lions and elephants in these regions, as well as other wild animals. There are camelopards, zebras, and quaggas, a species of wild ass, which the lion often makes his prey. There are also vast companies of antelopes, sometimes ten thousand in number, seen to cover the plains. The lion lurks near these herds, and often springs from his ambush upon them. Sometimes he will put his mouth to the ground, and utter a terrible roar. This frightens the antelopes, and they run in all directions; not knowing which way the dreadful sound comes from, they often rush to the very spot where the lion is concealed, and thus fall victims to his artifice.

---

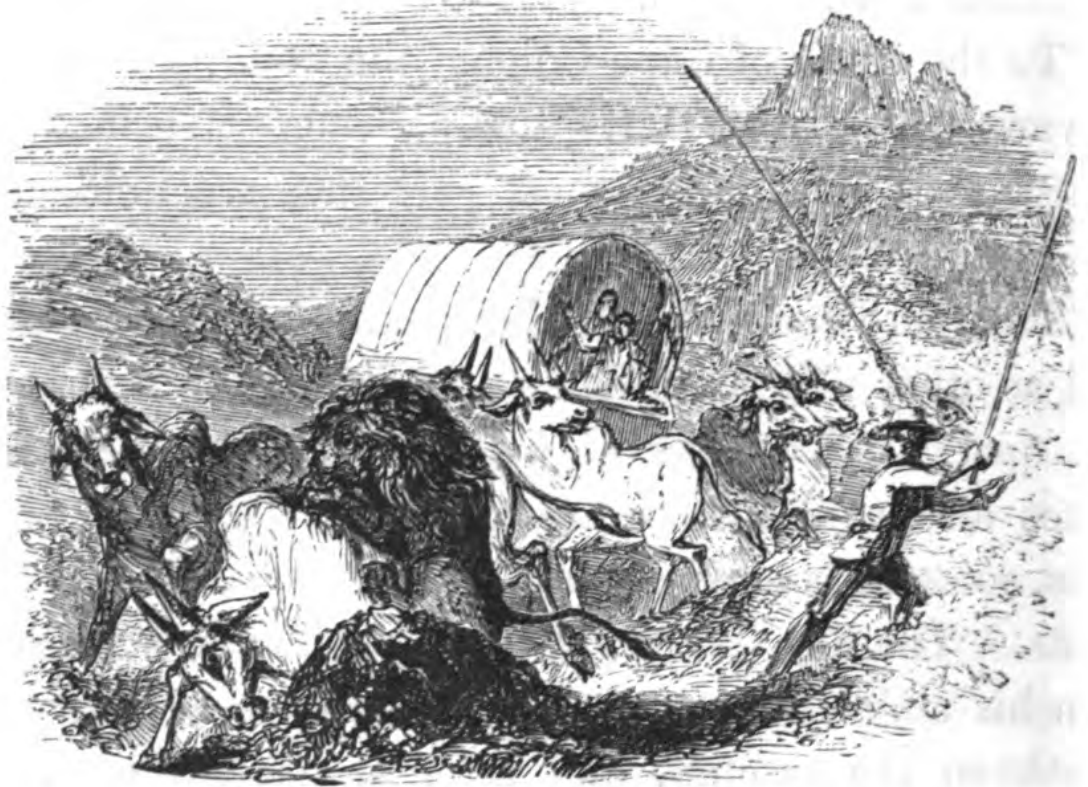
What remarkable mountain near Cape Town?

How is the country north of Cape Colony inhabited?

What is the character of the Hottentots?

What wild animals in South Africa?

The inhabitants have a great many adventures with lions, and often, when the waggon of the traveller stops for the night in the dreary desert, it is attacked by these dangerous animals. In general, they will let a man pass with-



WAGGON OF THE TRAVELLER ATTACKED BY A LION.

out molesting him; but, if very hungry, they forget their usual politeness. I have heard of a Dutchman, named Lucas, who was riding through the Hottentot country, when he saw a lion at no great distance. Lucas expected that the lion would let him pass; but, instead of this, he

---

How does the lion deceive the antelopes?

leaped from his ambush, and came upon both horse and rider like a thunderbolt. The horse was instantly thrown to the ground, and the teeth of the lion were fastened in his throat.

Lucas scrambled out of the fray, and ran with all his might. The lion was too busy with the horse to follow him, so he escaped to a house at some distance. After awhile, he returned to the spot. The lion was gone, but the flesh of the horse was entirely devoured, and nothing was left but his clean-picked bones. Even the saddle had disappeared, and poor Lucas never found it. Perhaps other animals, besides the lion, came in for a share.

On the eastern coast of Africa, near to Cape Colony, is a nation, the people of which are called Caffres. They inhabit a fruitful country, and, as I have said before, are thought to be the handsomest Negroes in the world. They live in small villages; their houses consist of small half-round huts covered with coarse mats. They have large herds of cattle. They delight in hunting, and are very fond of a stiff, ridiculous kind of dance.

Still further to the north, along the eastern coast of Africa, there are other tribes of Negroes, and several tribes of Arabs; but, little being known of them, I shall not undertake to describe them.

I have already told you so much about Africa, that you are, perhaps, weary of the subject; but to me it is an interesting part of the world. Formerly, the accounts given us of the people of Africa represented the Negro races as a stupid, debased portion of the human family, only fit to be the slaves and servants of the rest of mankind.

But modern travellers, more worthy of credit, give more favourable representations. Both Denham and Clapperton found the Negroes of Central Africa more intelligent and more civilised than the world has been led to believe them. The Caffres and Hottentots are now known to be superior, in every respect, to what their Dutch neighbours used to say they were.

There is in truth little reason to doubt, that for the purpose of providing some excuse for the barbarous and cruel treatment of the Negroes, the Europeans have been accustomed to misrepresent them. How much more delightful would it be, to see all Christian people uniting, with heart and hand, to spread the light of education, and religious knowledge, among the unfortunate millions of Africa, rather than to send people to force away the inhabitants, by violence and treachery, and then attempt to excuse this mean and dastardly conduct, by representing them as brutes, rather than men.

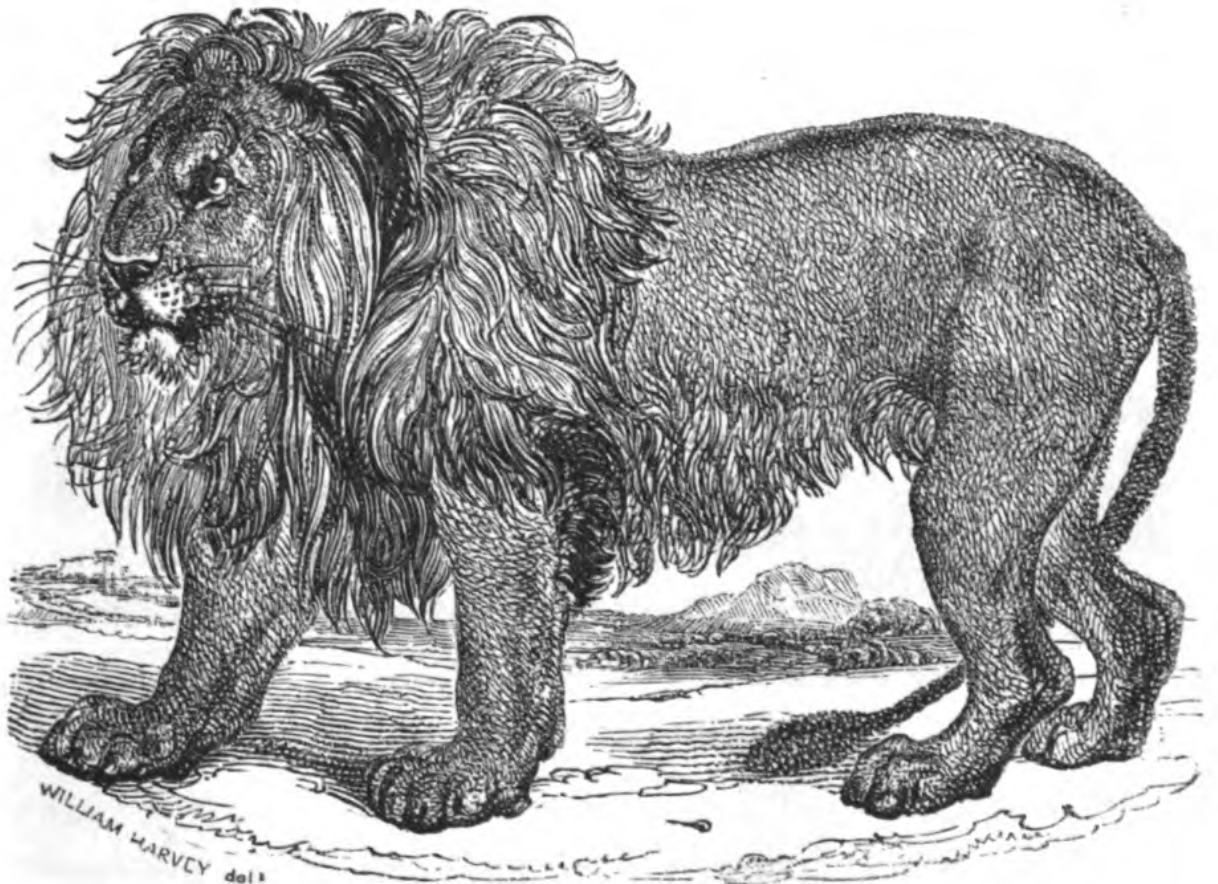
---

What of the inhabitants to the north of the Caffres?

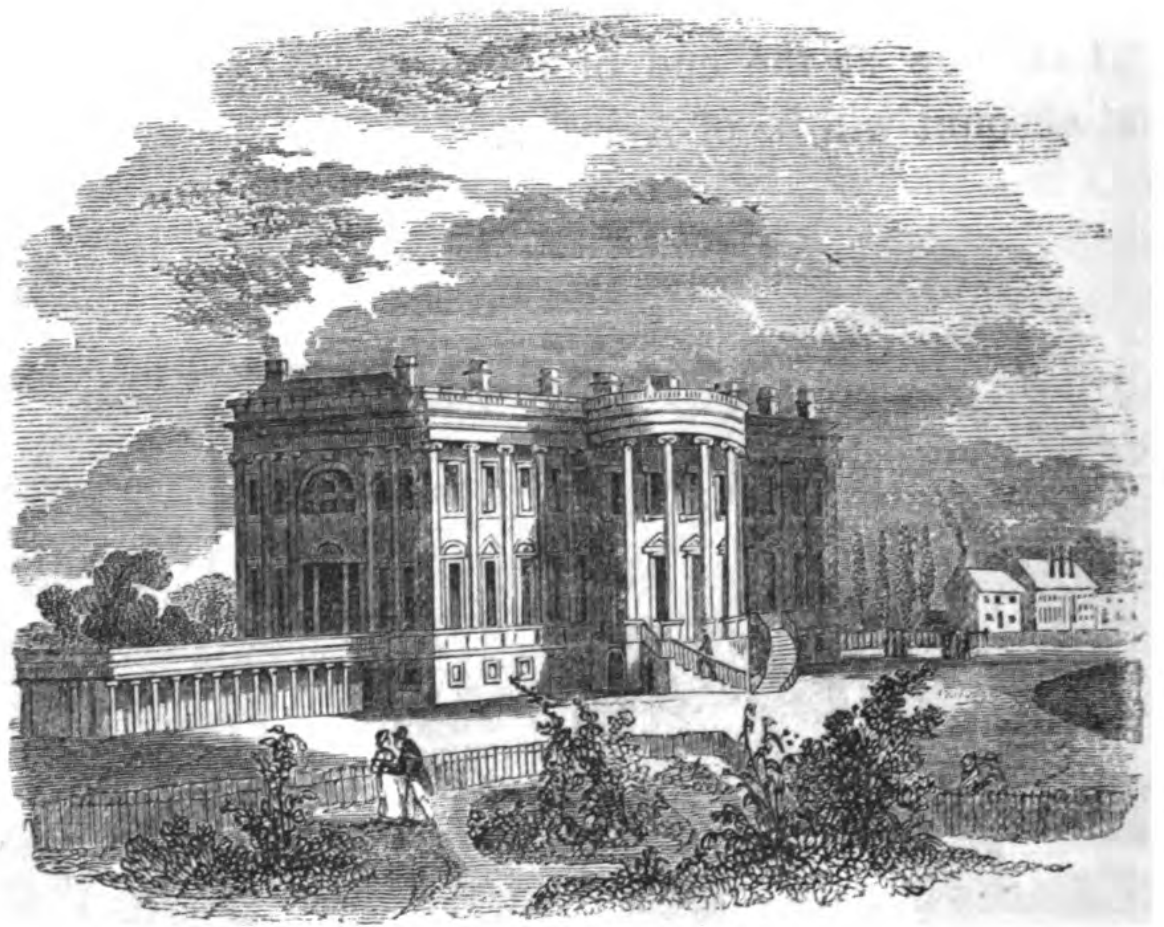


After a stay of four weeks at Cape Town, our vessel was ready to proceed on her voyage. We therefore hoisted our sails, and, bidding adieu to Africa, we stretched forth to the eastward upon the great Indian Ocean. This we crossed without any particular accident.

I am now at the end of my story about Africa. My next account will be of America.



THE LION.

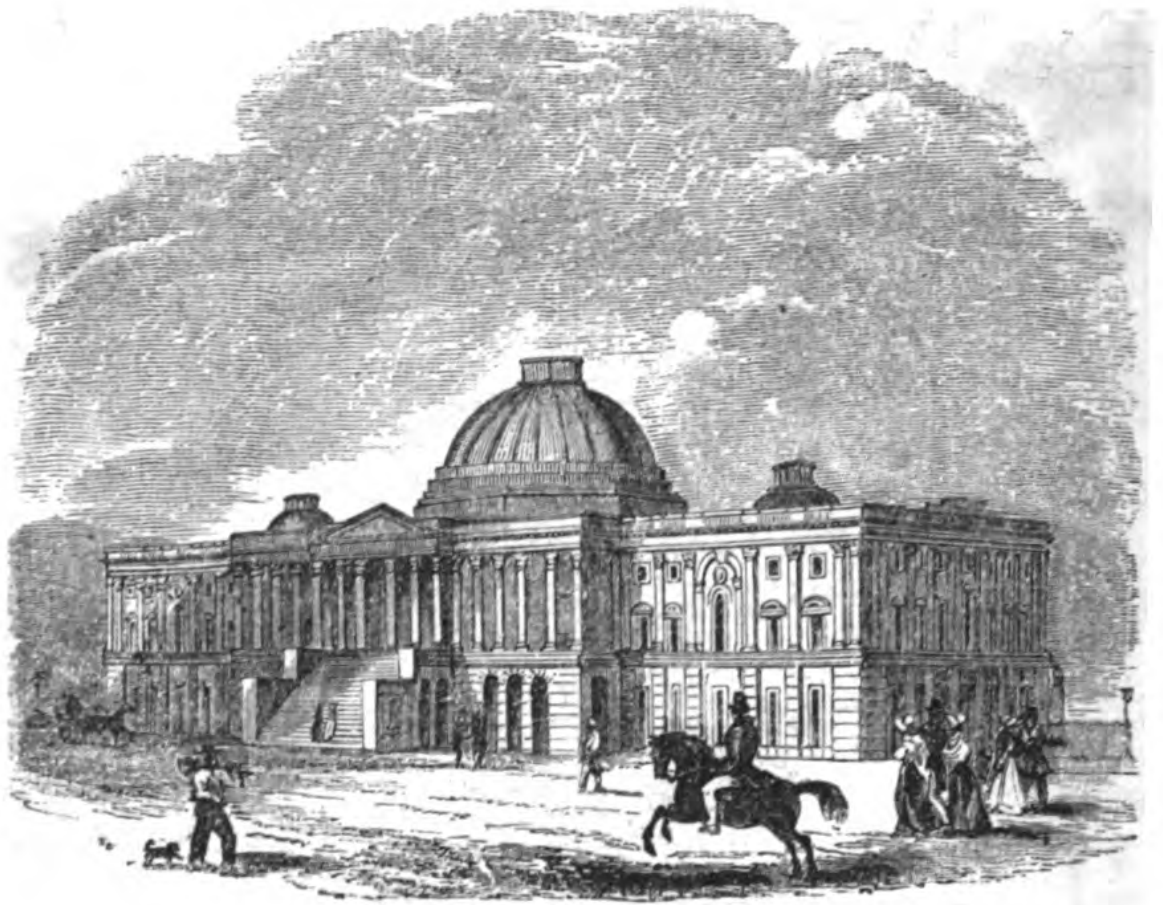


**PRESIDENT'S HOUSE.**

PETER PARLEY'S  
TALES ABOUT AMERICA.



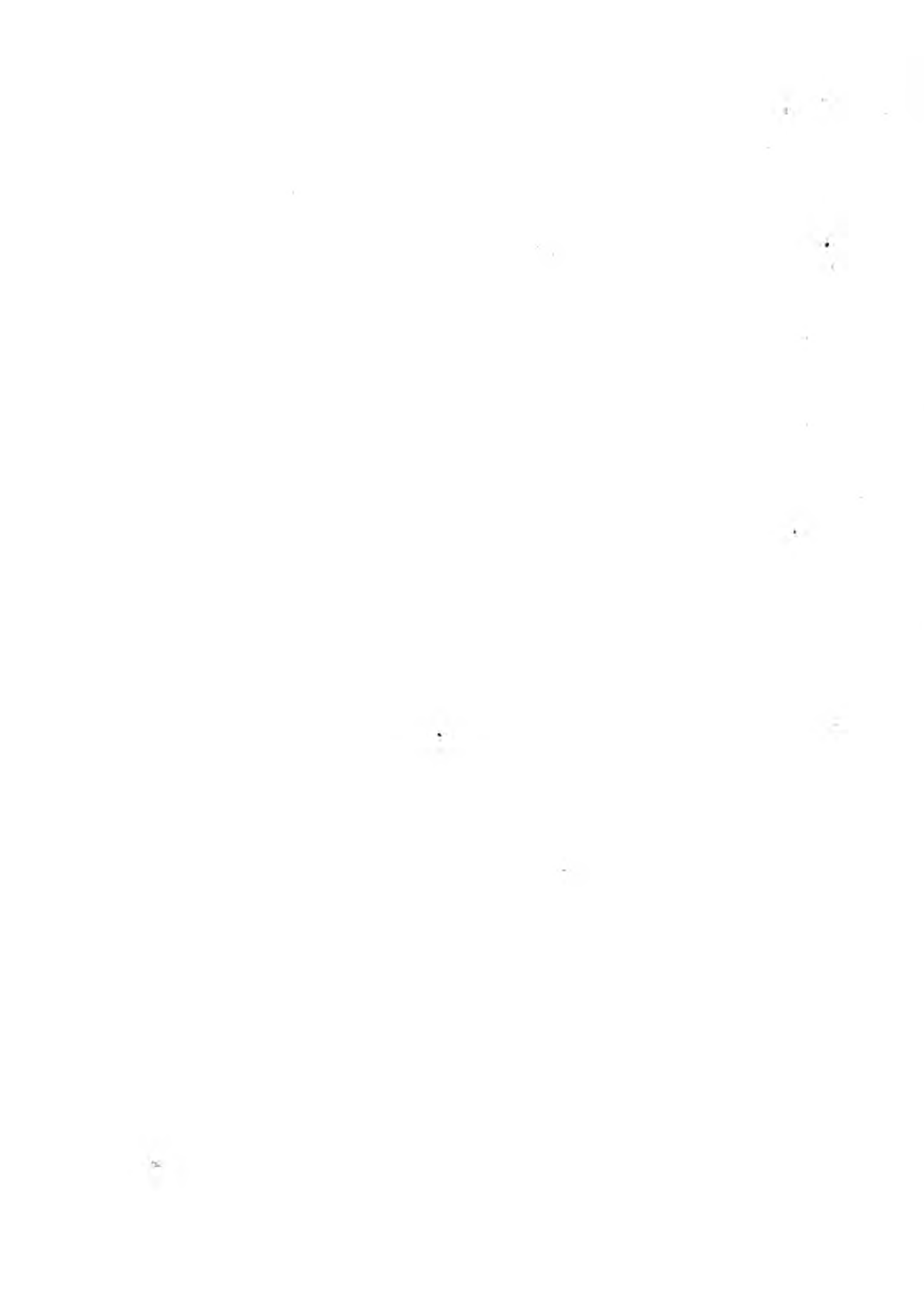
PETER PARLEY TELLING HIS TALES ABOUT AMERICA.



**CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.**













PETER PARLEY'S  
TALES ABOUT AMERICA.

---

CHAPTER I.

PARLEY TELLS ABOUT HIMSELF, ABOUT BOSTON, AND  
ABOUT THE INDIANS.

I HAVE told you about Europe, Asia, and Africa. I am now going to tell you some interesting stories about America, and the Red Indians—stories of what I have seen, and what I have heard.

I live in Boston, which you know is a large town, full of houses, with a great many streets, and a great many people or inhabitants in it.

In the streets of this place you may see some persons riding about in coaches, some riding on horseback, some running, and some walking.

When I was a little boy, Boston was not half so large as it is now, and that large building, which stands very



THE CITY OF BOSTON.

high, as you see in the print, called the New State House, was not built then.

Do you know that the very place, where Boston stands, was once covered with woods, and that in those woods lived many Indians? Did you ever see an Indian?

The Indians used to go nearly naked, except in winter.

---

Where is Boston? What kind of a town is Boston?

What will you see when you go to Boston?

Who once lived in the woods where Boston now stands?

Their skin is not white, like ours, but reddish, or the colour of copper.



AMERICAN INDIANS WITH TOMAHAWK.

When I was a boy, there were a great many Indians, that lived at no great distance from Boston. They lived in little huts or houses built of branches of trees, called wigwams.

The Indians were very ignorant ; they could not read nor write ; their wigwams were very small and inconvenient. They had no such fine rooms in them as our houses have, nor had they any chimneys or fire-places.

---

How did the Indians use to go dressed ? What is the colour of their skin ? What sort of houses had the Indians ? Had their houses any chimneys ?

The Indians had no chairs to sit in, nor tables to from. They had no books to read, and had no schools nor



INDIAN WIGWAM, OR HUT.

churches. In winter, they sometimes wore skins of bears and deer, which they shot with bows and arrows, or with guns.

There are no Indians near Boston now ; they are nearly all dead, or gone far west over the mountains. But, as I said before, when I was a boy, there were a good many in

---

Had they chairs or tables ? Had they books ?  
Had they schools or churches ?  
Are there any Indians near Boston now ?

New England, and they used often to come to Boston to sell the skins of wild beasts, which they had killed in the woods.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### PARLEY TELLS HIS ADVENTURES.

WHEN I was about twelve years old, an Indian, by the name of Wampum, came to my father's house in Boston, He had once been a chief, or great man, among the Indians, but he was now poor.

He was generally esteemed a good Indian, and he loved my father, because he once saved his life, when he was attacked by some sailors in the streets of Boston.

He asked my father to let me go home with him. He told me of the excellent sport they had in shooting squirrels and deer where he lived; so I begged my father to let me go, and he at length consented.

Wampum lived near Northampton, at the foot of a mountain called Mount Holyoke, just on the bank of Connecticut River. It is about one hundred miles from Boston.

---

What has become of them ?

What had Wampum been once ? Where did Wampum live ?



There is a good road from Boston to Northampton now. But the road was bad when I went with Wampum, and there were no stage coaches or railroads in America then.

So Wampum and I set out on foot. The second day we arrived at Worcester. It was then a very little town, and there were no such fine houses there as now.

The fourth day we arrived at Wampum's house, which was a little wigwam at the foot of Mount Holyoke.

In this little house we found Wampum's wife and three children : two boys and a girl. They came out to meet us, and were very glad to see Wampum and me.

I was very hungry and tired when I arrived. Wampum's wife roasted some bear's flesh, and gave us some bread made of pounded corn for our supper.

We sat on the floor, and took the meat in our fingers, for the Indians had no knives and forks. I then went to bed on some bear skins, and slept very well.

Early in the morning Wampum called me from my

---

How far is Mount Holyoke from Boston?

What kind of road is there now from Boston to Northampton?

Was it as good when Parley went with Wampum?

What does Parley say about Worcester?

What did Parley eat for supper at Wampum's house?

How did he sit? How did he take his meat?

sleep, and told me they were going into the woods to shoot, and that I must go with them. I was soon ready, and set out with Wampum and his two sons.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### PARLEY TELLS HOW HE WENT OUT WITH A SHOOTING PARTY.

It was a fine bright morning in October. The sun was shining on the summit of Mount Tom and Mount Holyoke, two mountains near Northampton. We ascended Holyoke through the woods.

At length we climbed a high rock, from which we could see a beautiful valley far below us, in the centre of which was the little town of Northampton, then much smaller than it is now.

“Do you see those houses?” said Wampum to me. “When my grandfather was a boy, there was not a house

---

What did he sleep upon?

Where are Mount Tom and Mount Holyoke?

What town did Parley see from the top of Mount Holyoke?

where you now see so many. That valley, which now belongs to white men, then belonged to the red men.

“Then the red men were rich and happy; now they are poor and wretched. Then that beautiful river, which you see running through the valley, and which is called the Connecticut, was theirs.

“They owned these fine mountains too, they hunted in these woods, and fished in that river, and were numerous and powerful. Now they are few and weak.”

“But how has this change happened?” said I. “Who has taken your lands from you, and made you miserable?”

“I will tell you all about it to-night,” said Wampum, “when we return from shooting. But hark! I hear a squirrel chattering in the woods; we must go and find him. Whist!” said Wampum, “and follow me.”

We all followed accordingly, and soon discovered a fine grey squirrel in the top of a tree, sitting erect on his hind legs, with his tail curled over his back, and a nut between his fore paws.

Wampum beckoned to his youngest son, who drew his bow, and discharged his arrow, which whistled over the back of the squirrel, but did not touch him.

Wampum's eldest son immediately shot his arrow, which struck the squirrel in the side, and brought him instantly to the ground.

After this adventure, we proceeded cautiously through the woods. We had not gone far, when Wampum beckoned to us all to stop.

“Look yonder,” said he to me, “on that high rock above us!” I did so, but could see nothing. “Look again,” said Wampum. I did, and saw a young hind standing upon the point of a rock, which hung over the valley.

She was a beautiful little animal, full of spirit, with large black eyes, slender legs, and of a reddish-brown colour.

Wampum now selected a choice arrow, placed it on the bow, and sent it whizzing through the air. It struck the fawn directly through the heart.

The little animal sprang violently forward, over the rock, and fell dead many feet below, where Wampum’s sons soon found him. We now returned to Wampum’s house, carrying the fawn with us.



THE SQUIRREL.



## CHAPTER IV.

PARLEY TELLS HOW WAMPUM TALKED OF HIS  
FOREFATHERS.

IN the evening, I reminded Wampum of his promise to tell me how the Indians had been robbed of their lands, and reduced to poverty. He accordingly began as follows:—

“It is not a hundred and fifty years since there were no white men in this country. There were none but red men or Indians. They owned all the lands; they hunted, and fished, and rambled where they pleased.

“The woods were then full of deer and other game, and in the rivers there were a great many salmon and shad.

“At length the white men came in their ships from across the sea. The red men saw them, and told them they were welcome. They came ashore, and the red men received them kindly.

“The white men built houses, and they grew strong, and drove the red men, who had welcomed them, and whose lands they had taken, back into the woods. They killed

---

Will you tell me what Wampum said to Parley about the white people and the Indians? If you will learn it by heart, you can say it all very easy.



the children of the red men, they shot their wives, they burned their wigwams, and they took away their lands.

“The white men had guns, the Indians had only bows and arrows. The red men fought and killed many white men, but the white men killed more of the red men.

“The red men were beaten. They ran away into the woods. They were broken-hearted, and they died. They are all dead, or gone far over the mountains, except a few, and we are poor and wretched.”



THE FIGHT.

The old Indian said no more ; he looked sad, and his two sons looked sad also ; and I almost cried because Wampum looked so unhappy.

I did not understand this story very well, but when I got back to Boston, thought I, I will ask my grandfather about it, and he will tell me the whole story of the poor Indians.

---

## CHAPTER V.

### PARLEY TELLS HOW HE WENT TO VERMONT.

AFTER I had been at Wampum's house about a week, he told me, that he and his eldest son were going to see some Indians in Vermont, then called New Connecticut, and I might go with them if I chose. I was very happy to go, for I delighted to ramble in the woods, and to hunt squirrels and deer.

So we set out, crossed to the west side of Connecticut River at Northampton, and travelled along its banks, through Hatfield, Deerfield, and Greenfield.

---

What was Vermont called when Parley went there?

What towns did Parley pass through on the banks of Connecticut River?

We went over the very place where the beautiful town of Brattleboro' now stands. It was covered with woods, and scarcely a house was there then.

If you will look at a map of New England, you can trace our route. After travelling three days, we arrived at what are now called Bellows Falls, about one hundred and ten miles north-west of Boston, in the State of Vermont.

It is a wild place ; the rocks are very high and rough, and the water of the Connecticut River pours over them with such fury, that it is worked into foam, and it roars like thunder.

I was alarmed when I first saw it whirling and boiling, and roaring so loudly, that the sight made me giddy, and the noise almost made me deaf. But, by and by, I began to like the place, and to admire its strange and wild appearance.

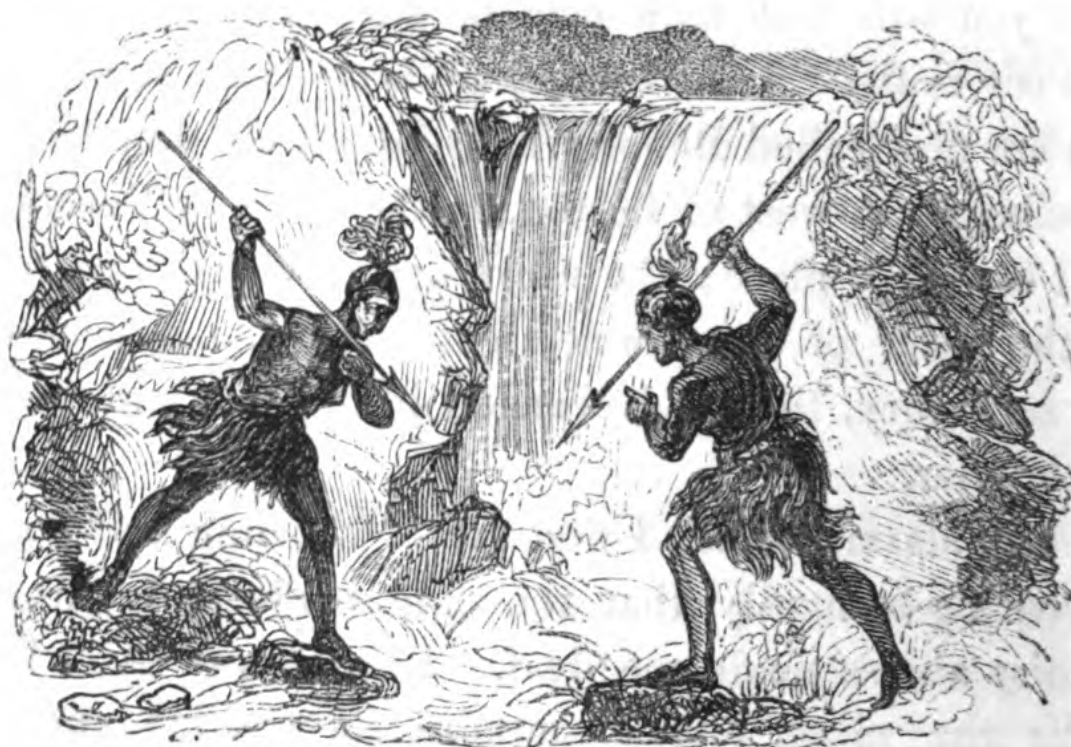
Wampum told me that, in the spring of the year, the salmon, a large fine fish, would come up the river from the sea, and ascend over the falls.

This must have been very difficult ; but the salmon is a strong and active fish. Sometimes they would have to try several times before they could succeed ; but at length they would spring over the rocks, and pass up the river.

---

How far are Bellows Falls from Boston, and in what direction?

Wampum said that the Indians were in the habit of coming in the spring to spear the salmon as they were trying to get over the falls.



INDIANS SPEARING SALMON AT BELLOWS FALLS.

He described it as being excellent sport.

If you were to go to Bellows Falls now, you would find a pretty village there, and a fine bridge, from which you could see the falls directly under you, to great advantage. But when I went there with Wampum, there was no bridge, and only a few small huts or houses.

---

What did Wampum say the Indians used to go to Bellows Falls for in the spring?



## CHAPTER VI.

PARLEY CONTINUES TO TELL HIS ADVENTURES IN  
VERMONT.

THE Indian village we were going to was a few miles west of Bellows Falls. We left the falls about sunset, and entered an Indian path through the woods.

We had not gone far when we saw a bear coming directly towards us. Wampum had a carbine in his hand, which, you know, is a short gun.

He levelled it at the bear, and shot at him. The bullet hit the bear on the head, but did not kill him. He seemed in a great rage, and came fiercely towards us, growling terribly.

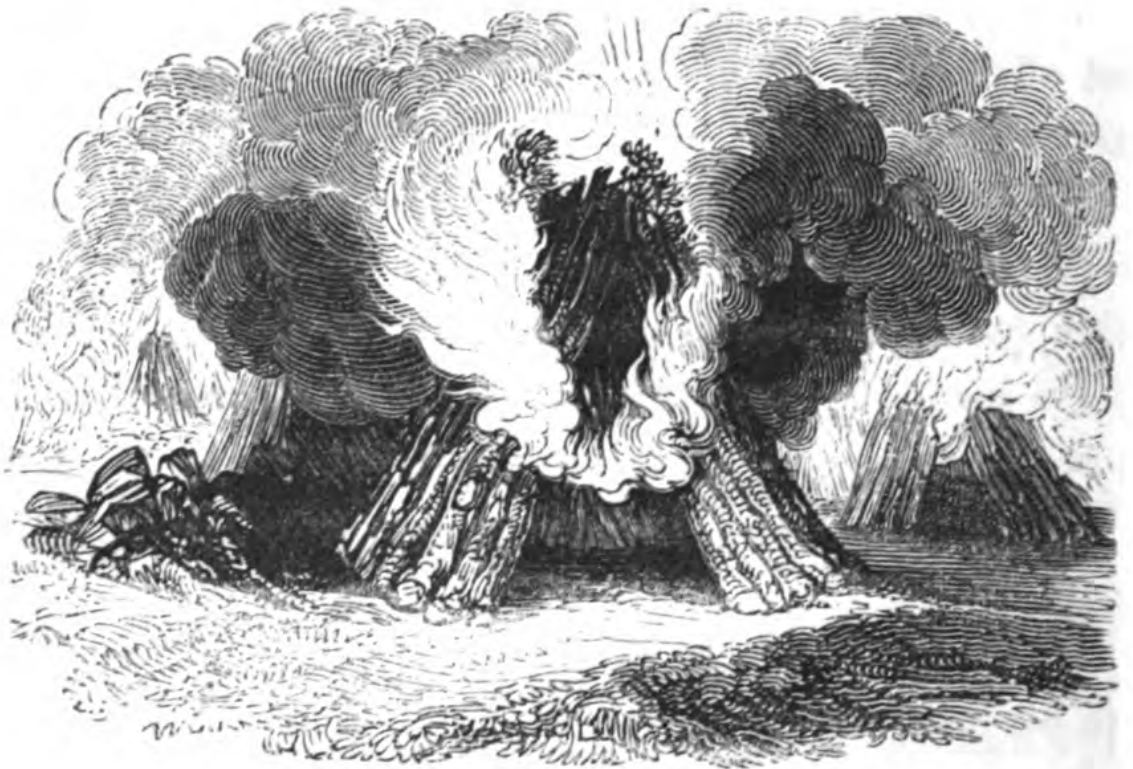
He sprang towards Wampum, striking at him forcibly with his fore paws. Wampum, jumping on one side, allowed the bear to pass him; at the same time he plunged a knife into his side, which instantly killed him.

Soon after this, we arrived at the Indian village, which consisted of about twelve wigwams, in which were thirty or forty Indians, including women and children.



It was night when we arrived, and I felt alarmed to see so many Indians around me. They seemed, also, to look upon me with dislike. But I felt sure that Wampum would protect me, so I was easy.

I was very much fatigued when I went to bed, and I fell into a deep sleep, from which I did not awake till about sunrise, when I was startled by shrieks, and shouts, and the firing of guns.



INDIAN WIGWAMS ON FIRE.

I instantly ran to the door, and saw the Indians running swiftly into the woods, while a party of about twenty soldiers were firing upon them.

The Indians soon disappeared, and the soldiers set the wigwams on fire. They made a great blaze.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### PARLEY TELLS OF HIS RETURN WITH THE SOLDIERS, AND OTHER MATTERS.

THE soldiers now prepared to return to Fort Dummer, from whence they had come. It was a distance of about thirty miles, and was situated about three miles below Brattleboro' on Connecticut River.

As the soldiers expected to be pursued by the Indians, they thought it necessary to return as fast as possible, and reach the fort that night. Accordingly, they set out immediately and marched rapidly forward, taking me with them.

As we were going along through the woods, one of the soldiers asked me how I came to be among the Indians. I therefore told him my story.

---

How far was Fort Dummer from Brattleboro'?

He said that the Indians were very wicked, that they had killed a number of people, and that they assisted the French in Canada, who were then making war upon us.

This, you will recollect, was the period of the *French war*, of which I will tell you more by and by.

We had not proceeded far, before we heard the report of a gun, and a bullet whistled over our heads. The forest was here very thick, and we knew the Indians were around us.

The soldiers looked in every direction, but the cunning Indians kept themselves concealed behind the trees. Soon several guns were fired from a thicket, and one of the soldiers was wounded.

Looking in that direction at the moment, I distinctly saw Wampum with his head above the bushes. At the same instant, one of the soldiers saw him also, and fired at him. I clearly saw my old protector and friend fall, and had no doubt that he was killed.

The Indians set up a wild and fearful yell, which seemed to startle the very trees. The soldiers took advantage of the moment to push rapidly forward, and reached Fort Dummer in the evening.

If mankind had taken half the pains to live in peace, and do good to one another, as they have to excite wars, and do each other mischief, how many midday horrors

and midnight murders would have been avoided. What an undeserved mercy it is that God bears with us, when we bear so little with each other !

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

### PARLEY TELLS ABOUT HARTFORD, THE CHARTER, AND CONNECTICUT RIVER.

HERE I stayed five or six days. I then went down the Connecticut river in a boat to Hartford. Hartford is situated on the river, and is a fine town now.

It was a small town then. There is a large State House there now, and an Asylum for the poor Deaf and Dumb, and a Retreat for Insane People. None of these things were in Hartford when I was there.

I remember there was a house there then, standing on a hill, owned by Mr. Wyllis, the frame of which was brought from England : in front of the house there was a large oak tree, in which the people hid the charter of Connecticut many years before.

This charter was a piece of parchment, resembling

---

What does Parley say of Hartford ?



paper, on which a king of England, Charles II., had written a promise that the people of Connecticut should be free.

When you go to Hartford you can see this charter in the Museum. But when Charles II. died, his brother, James II., became king in England.

Now James sent Sir Edmund Andros over to get away the charter. But the people would not let him have it, and they hid it in the old oak tree in front of Mr. Wyllis's house.

At Hartford, I entered on board the sloop Chenevard, and sailed for New York. We went down Connecticut River, which enters Long Island Sound about fifty miles from Hartford.

Connecticut River is the largest river in New England. It rises in Canada : it is about three hundred miles long, and is one of the most beautiful rivers in the world.

The water is clear, and the country through which it passes is delightful. You should look on the map of New England, and see the course of this fine river.

---

What does Parley say of the charter of Connecticut?

Who sent Sir Edmund Andros to take away the charter ?

About how long ago did Sir Edmund Andros come to get the charter of Connecticut?

What is the largest river in New England? How long is Connecticut River? Where does it rise? Where was the sloop in which Parley sailed very near being dashed to pieces?



About eight miles from New York, our sloop was very near being dashed to pieces, in what is called Hellgate, or Hurlgate.

This is a whirlpool, where the water is whirled round so violently, that sometimes vessels are drawn into it, and dashed to pieces on the rocks. We fortunately escaped, however, and arrived at New York.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### PARLEY TELLS OF NEW YORK.

NEW YORK is situated on an island, at the mouth of the Hudson River, and is the largest city in America. They say that there are more than a hundred and sixty thousand people in it now.

It is three times as large as Boston. It has a fine building, called the City Hall, which is thought to be handsomer than the new State House in Boston.

---

How far is Hurlgate from New York? What is Hurlgate?

How is New York situated?

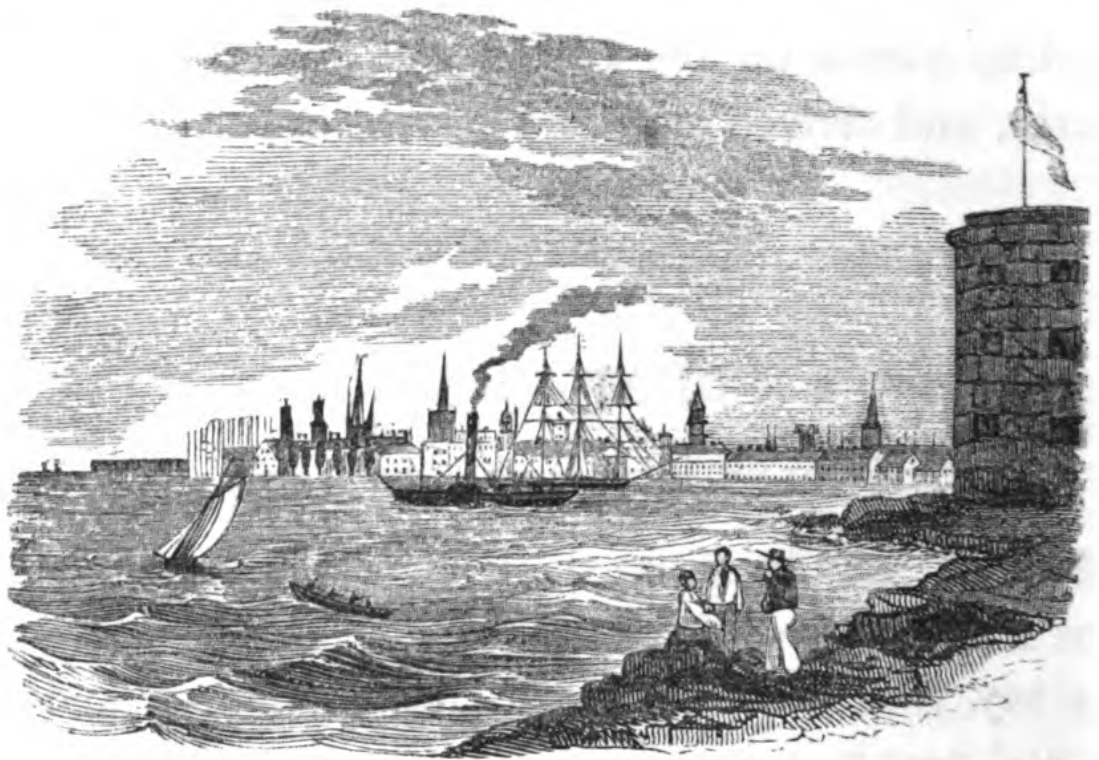
Which is the largest city in the United States?

How many people are there in New York?

How many times is it larger than Boston?

When I arrived at New York, it was small compared with what it is now, but there were a great many people there then.

New York was first settled by Dutchmen—people who



VIEW OF NEW YORK FROM GOVERNOR'S ISLAND.

came from Holland in Europe. Dutchmen, you know, are celebrated as great smokers.

But there are people in New York from all parts of the

---

Who first settled New York?

What are the Dutch celebrated for?

Where do the French come from?

What sort of people are the French?

world. I saw some French people there, the first I had ever seen. They came from France, in Europe.

There are many English people in New York, and in



ENGLISH GENTLEMAN AND LADY.

other parts of America. They look very much like Americans.

You know that Spanish people come from Spain, in Europe. There are many of them also in New York.

---

Where do the English come from?

Whom do they resemble?

Where do the Spanish come from?



SPANIARDS.

I also saw in New York some Turks, with long beards, red cloaks, and turbans on their heads. They came from Turkey in Europe.

I also saw some Chinese in New York, who came from China, where we get tea—a very distant country in Asia, of which I have already spoken in my tales about Asia.

After staying in New York about a month, I sailed for

---

Where do the Turks come from?  
Where do the Chinese come from?



A CHINESE SELLING RATS AND PUPPIES FOR PIES.

Boston in the schooner *Lively*, with Captain Phillips. We had a fine wind, which carried us briskly through Long Island Sound. Long Island Sound is a part of the sea, which lies between Connecticut and Long Island. We stopped at Newport, a fine town in the state of Rhode Island, to leave some goods.

---

What is Long Island Sound?

Where is Newport?



## CHAPTER X.

## PARLEY TELLS THE ADVENTURES OF JAMES JENKINS.

AT Newport, I met with James Jenkins, whom I had formerly known in Boston. The same James Jenkins of whom I have already spoken so much.

He was then a roving young fellow, and had just returned from a voyage to the West Indies, and had been to South America. On his way to the West Indies he stopped at Charleston.

Charleston is a large town in South Carolina, one of the United States, and is about seven or eight hundred miles south of Boston. The West Indies are a large number of islands, lying between North and South America.

You should look on the map, and find all the places that I mention, so that you will understand where they are situated.

---

Where had James Jenkins been?

What and where is Charleston?

What are the West Indies? Where do they lie?

Jenkins told me some strange stories of his adventures. I will tell you one or two of them here.

He sailed from Newport, Rhode Island, in the brig Yankee, with Captain Bassett. They had been at sea but a few days, when they were chased by a large French ship.

The French were at war with us then, and if the French ship could have taken the brig Yankee, they would have carried the captain and sailors prisoners to France, and taken away their goods.

So the sailors of the Yankee exerted every effort to escape, and the French ship strained every nerve to come up with her.

At length the French ship came near to the Yankee, and fired upon her. The cannon balls hissed through the air, and passed through the sails of the Yankee, but did no damage.

A second shot from the French ship killed two men, at the very side of Jenkins. The chase now was desperate.

The French ship kept an incessant fire, and their cannon shot poured over and around the Yankee in a shower. At this critical moment the sun went down, and night suspended the conflict.

---

Where did Jenkins sail from?

W

Captain Bassett took advantage of it to escape, and in the morning was out of sight of the French ship. In two days after this they arrived safe at Charleston.

Jenkins said he was astonished to see so many negroes at Charleston. There are many more negroes than white people there.

These negroes are slaves, and labour for the white people, to whom they belong. Jenkins saw negroes, men, women, and children, sold at public auction, as we sell goods.

Some of the negroes, who happen to have kind masters, are very happy; but those who have cruel masters are wretched indeed.

After staying a month at Charleston, the brig Yankee sailed for Cuba, the largest of the West India Islands, where she soon arrived.

The West Indies are celebrated for producing sugar. It is made from a plant, called sugar-cane, which grows somewhat like Indian corn, or water reeds.

What was Jenkins astonished to see at Charleston?

What did Jenkins see sold at public auction at Charleston?

Which is the largest of the West India islands?

What are the West India islands celebrated for?

What is sugar made from?

This is ground, and molasses or treacle is extracted from it. The sugar is found settled at the bottom of the molasses.

Jenkins found a great portion of the people in Cuba to be negroes. They are very fond of dancing.



NEGROES OF CUBA DANCING.

## CHAPTER XI.

## ADVENTURES OF JENKINS CONTINUED.

JENKINS and two of his companions, being on shore one night, were insulted by a drunken Spanish soldier. They resented it, and a scuffle ensued, in which the soldier was killed.

Jenkins and his two friends were apprehended for this affair, and sentenced to labour two years in the mines of Peru, in South America.

To this place they were soon transported, and served out the period of their sentence. Nothing could exceed the misery of their situation.

Do not pass by my map of South America without a glance at it. You will see that Peru is in the north-west part of the map, and near the South Pacific Ocean.

Jenkins and his friends were obliged to work in deep pits under ground, to get out the silver ore, and were often treated with the greatest severity by their masters.

---

What happened to Jenkins in Cuba?

Where were Jenkins and his companions sent?

What did Jenkins and his companions have to do in the mines?



At length they were set at liberty, and travelled across from Peru to Brazil, that is, from the western to the eastern side of South America.

During this long journey, Jenkins had an opportunity



PERUVIANS.

of seeing the manners of the people, and the appearance of the country.

There were at this time, and still are, many native Indians in South America. They have become more

---

Where did Jenkins travel when he was set at liberty?

What can you tell of the native Indians of South America?

civilised now, but they are still an ignorant and degraded people.



NATIVE INDIANS IN SOUTH AMERICA.

There is nothing in South America that strikes the beholder with so much astonishment as the Andes, a chain of mountains which runs through it from north to south. They are among the loftiest mountains in the world. The highest peak, Chimborazo, is about four miles high.

Some of these mountains are always covered with snow,

---

What strikes the beholder with astonishment in South America?  
What is the highest peak of the Andes?

and others have fires within them, and send forth, from the top, a constant stream of smoke, and sometimes flame and melted stones. These are called volcanoes.

You have heard, perhaps, of the anaconda, a very large serpent, found in South America. Jenkins told me the following story of one:—

A man was riding on horseback in the woods. A



▲ AN ANACONDA CRUSHING ▲ MAN AND HORSE.

serpent lay coiled by the path. When the man appeared, the serpent darted like lightning upon the horse, and wound himself around the horse and man with such force as instantly to crush them both.

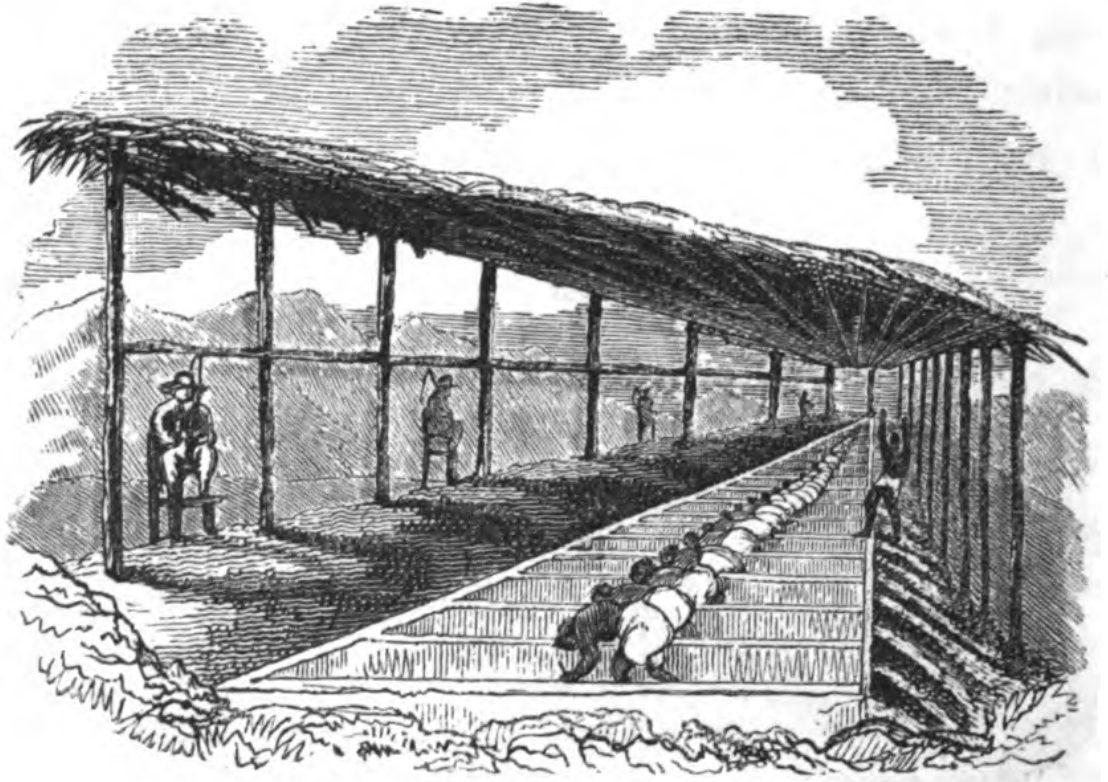
You have seen or heard of diamonds, bright stones,

---

What can you tell of the Andes? What is said of the anaconda?

which are very valuable and precious. These are found in South America.

They are washed from the mountains by rains, and are



SLAVES WASHING SAND TO FIND DIAMONDS.

found among the sand in the valleys. Slaves are employed in washing the sand for diamonds.

After a long and tedious journey on foot, across from Peru, which is on the western coast of South America, to Brazil, which is on the eastern coast, Jenkins and his party

---

Where are diamonds found? How are they obtained?



arrived at Rio Janeiro, a large town in Brazil, where he embarked for America, and arrived without further accident.

---

## CHAPTER XII.

### PARLEY SUFFERS SHIPWRECK.

JENKINS having finished his story, I went on board our schooner, and we soon set sail for Boston.

We had not been out from the harbour at Newport, in Rhode Island, more than a few hours, when it began to snow violently, and the wind rose till it blew a gale.

This wind was south-east, and therefore blew toward the shore. Lest we should be driven on the rocks and dashed to pieces, we stretched out to sea. But the wind was too furious to allow us to carry our sails; so we took them down, and the vessel lay to.

We were in this situation several hours. The gale, however, continually increased. I never shall forget the aspect of the sea at that time; its general appearance was black as ink, but the points of the waves were white with foam.

---

Where is Rio Janeiro?

What is Rio Janeiro?



They rose very high, and seemed agitated with desperate fury : sometimes several of them would roll together, and dash the spray high in the air ; then they would sink from our view, and leave a deep vale in the water.

Our little schooner danced on the ocean like a feather : now she was tossed suddenly aloft on the top of a wave ; now she slid deep into a trough formed in the sea ; now she was struck violently on the side, and nearly upset by a billow ; and now she groaned and shuddered as she was pressed on both sides by opposing waves.

Night, at length, came on ; and never did I witness its approach with feelings so dreary. The storm still raged with unabated fury, and we were now drifting along at its mercy.

We knew the land could not be very distant, and we expected to go ashore before morning. It was an anxious night. At length the dawn appeared, but only to disclose our danger.

At a short distance was the shore, bounded with steep and ragged rocks, and the resistless gale was driving us furiously upon them. We gave ourselves up for lost. Some knelt down to pray ; some cried aloud ; and one person leaped overboard through fear, and was drowned.

We soon felt the rocks grate on the bottom of the vessel. What a dreadful moment ! I expected to see the

vessel torn the next instant to pieces, and to be myself swallowed up in the waves.

At length a strong wave took the vessel on its top, and bore her along with astonishing force, and cast her high on the point of a rock.

What was our joy to find that, from this position, we could leap safely upon the overhanging cliff, and escape from the danger !

We did so instantly, and our expectations of immediate death were in a moment exchanged for a confidence of safety.

We found the place, where we had gone ashore, to be in New Hampshire, a distance of about sixty-five miles north-east from Boston.

From this place I travelled to Boston on foot.

I was delighted to get home again, and my family were rejoiced to see me. I told them my adventures, which they thought so strange, that at first they could hardly believe them.

---

In what place did Parley find the schooner was driven ashore?

## CHAPTER XIII.

## PARLEY TELLS ABOUT COLUMBUS.

LET me now tell you about Columbus. Columbus lived in Europe. Europe, as you know, is a large country, lying east of America, far over the Atlantic Ocean. There are a great many people there, and many towns and cities larger than Boston or New York.



COLUMBUS.

Well, about three hundred years ago, the people who lived on the other side of the Atlantic did not know that there was such a place as America.

Columbus told them that he believed there was such a place, and if they would give him some ships, he would sail

---

Where did Columbus live? What kind of a country is Europe?  
Where is Europe? What does Parley say there are in Europe?  
How long ago was it that the people on the other side of the Atlantic did not know of the existence of America?

across the water and see if there was. But they only laughed at him.

At length Columbus persuaded the Queen of Spain, whose name was Isabella, to let him have some money, with which he bought some ships, and set out to see if he could find a new country.

You know that people sail over the great Atlantic Ocean from Europe to America, and from America to Europe, very often now. There are ships, some sailing vessels and some steamers, called packets, which sail every week from New York for England.

These ships are very large and strong, and have fine rooms, called cabins, in them; but the time I am speaking of, you will remember, was more than three hundred years ago.

Well, when Columbus lived, the ships were small and weak, and it was dangerous to sail in them.

---

What did Columbus tell the people of Europe?

Whom did Columbus persuade to let him have some money?

What did he do with the money he received of Isabella?

Do people go across the Atlantic Ocean often now?

How do they go? What sort of ships are these packets?

How often do they sail from New York to England?

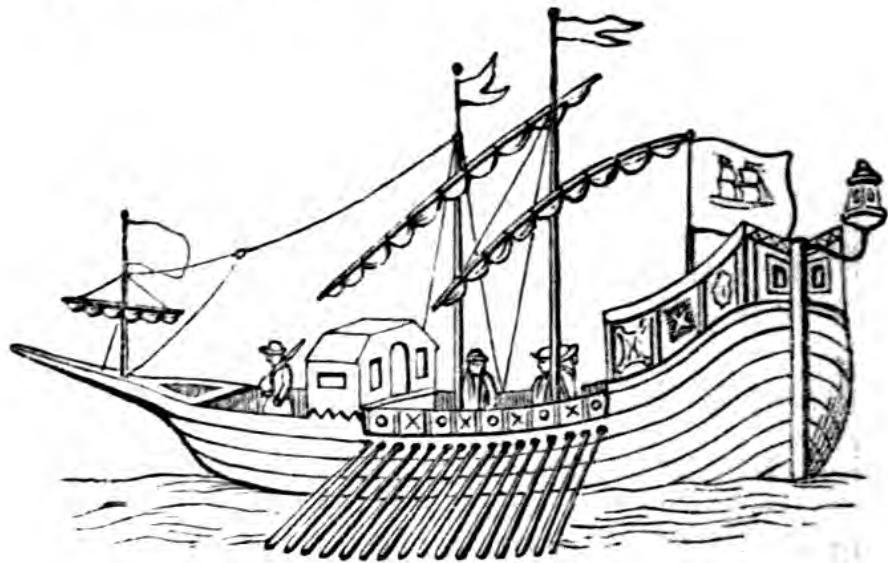
How long is it since Columbus sailed to America?

Was it dangerous to sail in the ships in the time of Columbus?

Why was it dangerous?

But Columbus was a brave man, and was not afraid. So he sailed out upon the water, and soon was so far away from the land, that he could see only the sea around him.

He sailed along for many days, but, at last, a storm arose; the wind blew terribly, and the waves rose and fell violently. The ships of Columbus were tossed about, and the water dashed over them in such a manner, that the sailors who were with Columbus were frightened, and thought they should all be drowned.



AN ANCIENT VESSEL.

They begged him to go back, and threatened to kill him if he did not. But Columbus would not go back.

After sailing along seventy days, one of the sailors, who

---

What sort of a man was Columbus?

Will you describe the storm at sea, that happened when Columbus was sailing to America? What did the sailors do?



was on the top of the mast of one of the ships, saw land over the water. He cried, "Land! land!" Columbus was delighted. This land was America.

None but Indians had ever seen it before, or known that such a country existed; Columbus and his people were the first persons from Europe who saw it, and visited it.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

### STORY OF COLUMBUS CONTINUED.

SOON after they had discovered the land, the ships arrived along the shore. What was the surprise of Columbus to see people on the land, nearly naked, and of a reddish copper colour! They were very different from any people he had ever seen.

These people were Indians; such as Wampum, that I have been telling you about. They were as much sur-

---

What happened after they had sailed seventy days?

Who were the first persons from Europe who saw and visited America?

What was Columbus surprised to see?

What kind of people were the Indians?

prised to see Columbus and his ships, as he was to see them. They had never seen a white man or a ship before.

They seemed to be a kind people, for they received Columbus with pleasure.



LANDING OF COLUMBUS AT ST. SALVADOR.

The place where Columbus first landed was an island in the West Indies, which he called St. Salvador. He found many kinds of fruits there, which he had never seen

---

How did they receive Columbus? What place did Columbus first land upon? What did he find there?

before. After staying many days, he sailed back to Europe, and arrived at Palos, in Spain, having been absent about seven months.

He told the people of Europe what he had seen; that he had discovered a new country, which abounded in delicious fruits, and silver and gold; and the people of which, instead of being white, were red.

This story of Columbus made many people anxious to come to the new country, which they afterwards called America, to see what they could discover, and to get fruits and precious metals.

Consequently, many persons went over to America; and a great part of them being bad and wicked men, they shot and murdered the poor Indians, destroyed their dwellings, got away their silver and gold, and took possession of their lands.

This was more particularly the case in South America and Mexico, which were conquered by the Spaniards, and made subject to the king of Spain.

- 
- What did Columbus do after staying many days at St. Salvador?  
At what place did he arrive? What did he do on his return?  
What effect had the story of Columbus in Europe?  
What consequently happened?  
Where was this more particularly the case?

I will tell you some stories relating to these countries. The most remarkable are those of Mexico and Peru.

---

## CHAPTER XV.

### STORIES OF CORTEZ AND PIZARRO.

MEXICO is on the southern part of North America. The territories, subject to the emperor of Mexico, were very extensive.

The capital of Mexico was situated in an extensive and beautiful valley, and was a large and splendid city. It was also called Mexico.

It was by far the greatest and most interesting city in all America, at the time of its discovery. The number of inhabitants was many thousands. The city still exists, and is a great place.

---

What countries were conquered, and made subject to the Spanish king? Where is Mexico?

Were the territories of the emperor of Mexico extensive?

What was the capital of his empire? How was it situated?

How did it compare with other towns in America at that time?

What was the number of the inhabitants?

Now, the king of Spain determined to conquer Mexico. The people of Mexico had indeed done him no harm, and owed him nothing : they were an innocent people, but this was no protection to them.

The person chosen to subdue Mexico was Fernando Cortez, a cruel and desperate man, as you will see. He took but about six hundred soldiers with him.

After several battles along the country in the way to Mexico, Cortez drew near to that city.



CORTEZ.

The emperor who reigned at that time was Montezuma ; he received Cortez with hospitality, and treated him kindly. But this did not prevent Cortez from pursuing his design : he took several men with him, suddenly

---

What did the king of Spain determine to do?  
 Had the people of Mexico injured the king of Spain?  
 What sort of people were they?  
 Who was chosen to subdue Mexico?  
 What sort of a man was Cortez?  
 How many soldiers did he take with him?  
 Who was now the emperor or king of Mexico?



entered the palace of Montezuma, seized him, and carried him away.

After a while he put fetters on him, and put him in prison. In this situation Montezuma remained a long and suffered very ill-treatment.

At length, the inhabitants being enraged against



DEATH OF MONTEZUMA.

---

How did he treat Cortez? What did Cortez do?

In what situation did Montezuma remain a long time?

What did Cortez do to appease the inhabitants of Mexico when they were enraged against him?

Cortez, to appease them he brought Montezuma before them. But they discharged a shower of arrows at him, and Montezuma was wounded.

The poor monarch soon died of his wounds and a broken heart. After his death, Mexico was bravely defended by his son, Guatimozin, who then became emperor.

But the city was unable to hold out, and at length it surrendered to Cortez. Thus Mexico became a part of the dominions of Spain.

The cruelties practised by Cortez and his companions, and their slaughter of the poor Mexicans, is enough to make one shudder.

By such means, the oppression and subjugation of the weak and defenceless, kings have been accustomed to increase their wealth and power, and call it glory. Mexico is now independent.

I will tell you another story of the same sort. A Spaniard, by the name of Pizarro, discovered Peru, a country in South America, celebrated for its mines of gold

---

What did the people do to Montezuma?

What became of Montezuma?

Who bravely defended Mexico after the death of Montezuma?

Did Mexico surrender to Cortez?

To what kingdom did Mexico become annexed?

Who discovered Peru? What is Peru celebrated for?

and silver. It is the same country where James Jenkins, that I told you of, was confined.

Pizarro having discovered this country, he resolved to conquer it. By artifice, he at length succeeded in making Atahualpa, one of the Indian chiefs, his prisoner.

He offered to let him go if he would pay him a large sum of gold. This

Atahualpa did. But Pizarro, instead of fulfilling his promise, burnt him to death! Such is the work of conquerors!

Pizarro then pursued his conquests, and succeeded in subjugating the whole of Peru in 1532. He then established laws for the country, and laid the foundation of the present town of Lima, which you will find on the maps of South America. But in 1541 he was murdered. This



PIZARRO.

---

By what means did Pizarro make Atahualpa prisoner?

How did Pizarro treat Atahualpa?

What then did Pizarro do? What town did Pizarro lay the foundation of? What was Pizarro's fate?

reminds me of a text of Scripture, "Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed."

I have now told you some of the most remarkable events which took place in South America. I will now tell you some stories of North America.

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

### PARLEY TELLS ABOUT THE SETTLEMENT OF NORTH AMERICA.

IN the year 1607, some English people, about one hundred in number, came to Virginia, and made a settlement on James River.

The first town they built they called Jamestown.

I need not tell you that no people but Indians lived in this part of North America at that time. The great towns, such as Boston, New York, Philadelphia, and others, did not exist then.

Vast forests extended over the whole country, and in

---

When, and by whom, was the first settlement made in Virginia?

What was the name of the first town they built?

What towns did not exist at the time we are speaking of?



these forests lived numerous tribes of Indians. These Indians were generally unfriendly to the white people, and would often kill them if they could.

One day, Captain Smith, who was one of the people of Jamestown, had been up a river in a boat. He was discovered by the Indians, seized by them, and carried before Powhattan, who was their chief, or king.

Powhattan and his counsellors decided that he should be put to death. Accordingly he was brought forward, and his head laid upon a stone. Powhattan then took a club, and raised it in the air to strike the fatal blow.

What was his astonishment to see his daughter, a beautiful Indian girl, run shrieking between him and Smith, and place herself in a situation to shelter him from the club of her father!

Powhattan was so much moved by the conduct of his enarming daughter, who thus taught him to exercise pity, that he saved Smith from death, and next day sent him in safety to his friends at Jamestown.

It was about eight years after the settlement of Virginia, that is, in 1615, some Dutch adventurers, from Holland, in Europe, made a settlement on the island of

---

What was the state of the country then?

Will you tell the story of Captain Smith?



New York, which was then called Manhattan. This laid the foundation of the city of New York.



POWHATTAN'S DAUGHTER SAVING THE LIFE OF CAPTAIN SMITH.

In the year 1620, some English people, called Puritans, arrived at Plymouth, in Massachusetts, and made the first settlement in New England.

They went to America, principally, freely to enjoy their

---

Who made a settlement on the island of New York? When was this done? What was the island of New York called? What city did the settlement of York Island give rise to?

When did the Puritans come to America? Where did they arrive? What settlement did the Puritans make? What did they come to America for?

own peculiar religion. They were about one hundred in number.

The place where they happened to land had been deserted by the Indians, on account of a fatal disease that had prevailed there some years before.

We often hear people railing against doctors, but when we reflect for a moment on the situation of the poor Indians, afflicted with disease, without medicine, or medical men, it is enough to make us grateful that we are not equally destitute.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

### PARLEY CONTINUES TO TELL OF THE SETTLEMENTS OF NORTH AMERICA.

THESE Puritans divided themselves in nineteen families, and each family built a small house. Several Indians had been discovered in the woods, but they fled as the white people came near them.

But one day an Indian came among them, and surprised

---

How many of these Puritans were there?  
How did they divide themselves?

them by exclaiming, "Welcome, Englishmen! Welcome, Englishmen!"

His name was Samoset; he had learned to speak English of some fishermen that he had seen. He was a good friend to the English, and persuaded Masassoit to come and see them.

Masassoit was a great chief, or Indian king, and he made an agreement with the English to be at peace with them, and not to injure them.

I have now told you of the three first settlements made in North America—Virginia, New York, and New England. These settlements were called Colonies.

The people of the colonies met with a great many difficulties; sometimes they were afflicted with fatal sickness; sometimes their crops of grain were cut short, and they were visited with famine; sometimes they were involved in the miseries of a war with the Indians.

But, notwithstanding all these trials, the colonies flourished, and others were established.

In 1621, the first settlement was made in Delaware,

---

What surprised the Puritans one day? What was this Indian's name? How had he learned English?

What did he persuade Masassoit to do? Who was Masassoit? What were the settlements in North America called? Will you describe their difficulties?

by some people from Sweden and Finland, called Swedes and Fins.

In 1634, Lord Baltimore, an English nobleman, sent out a colony of Roman Catholics, who settled in Maryland.

In 1681, William Penn, a Quaker, made a settlement of Quakers in Pennsylvania.

Thus, you see, in the space of a few years after the settlement of Virginia, a large portion of what is now called the United States was inhabited; and, the settlement of the country thus begun, it increased beyond what has ever been known in any other country.

---

When, and by whom, was the settlement made in Delawere?

When, and by whom, was Maryland settled?

When, and by whom, was the first settlement in Pennsylvania made?



**BARTERING WITH THE INDIANS.**



## CHAPTER XVIII.

## PARLEY TALKS ABOUT THE SETTLEMENT OF NORTH AMERICA, AND THE OLD FRENCH WAR.

YOU will readily understand that the people who lived in those days were very differently situated from what we are now.

If you look on the map, you will see it filled with the names of towns, and crossed in every direction by roads.

About one hundred and fifty years ago, very few of these towns existed. The land, where they now stand, was covered with forests.

If you were to travel through that country now, you would see fine houses, gardens, orchards, and cultivated fields. Their place was then occupied by a vast wilderness.

Now, there are stage coaches and steamboats, which will carry you rapidly from one end of the country to the other.

Then, there were no roads, or very indifferent ones, and

---

What will you see if you look on the map of the United States?

What can you say of the existence of these towns one hundred and fifty years ago?

What was there, where these towns are now?



travelling was attended with danger from the Indians, and the wild beasts, that lurked in the forests.

You see, then, how much happier our condition is than that of our forefathers. And how do you think the change, that we have just noticed, and for which we owe so much to our ancestors, has been accomplished?

How have the forests been levelled, and made to give place to fruitful fields? How have large and showy cities been built? How have useful and pleasant roads been made?

How have the wild beasts been subdued? How have the Indians been driven over the mountains? How, in short, has a wild wilderness been converted into a beautiful and happy land?

It would take me a long time to answer all these questions. I have only time to tell you just now, though many instances of oppression might be mentioned, that this great and happy change has been effected, in a great degree, by the industry, courage, and virtue of our forefathers.

Let me recommend it to you, as soon as you can, to read the history of America. You will find it very in-

---

What would you now see if you were to travel through the United States? What will now carry people from one end of the country to the other? What was the state of the country, in respect to travelling, one hundred and fifty years ago? Is our condition happier than that of our forefathers?

teresting, and it will tell you the whole story of what I have just been talking about.

I must now pass over a long period of time, during which America rapidly advanced in numbers and power, and come to the year 1756.

This was the period of a celebrated war, called the Old French War.

You will recollect that America was settled by English people, and belonged to England. The French had made some settlements in Canada, on the north, and along the rivers Mississippi and Ohio, on the west, while the English had been forming the settlements along the Atlantic shore.

Well, France and England went to war. It is always the object of two nations engaged in war, to do to each other as much harm as possible, and to conquer and take possession of each other's lands or territories, if they can.

To promote these objects, their soldiers do not hesitate to kill the people, burn the houses, and destroy the property of such countries as they are at war with.

---

How was the great change that has taken place in America since its settlement been effected?

When was the Old French War?

Who settled this country, and to what country did it belong?

Where had the French made some settlements?

Whatever belongs, therefore, to a country at war with another, is exposed to all the evils which such a state of things may threaten. This you will say is a hard case, but it is as I have described it.

Now, the principal settlements, or colonies, in North America belonged to England; of course the French endeavoured to do them all the mischief in their power, and to conquer them, if possible. The English, in like manner, exerted themselves to annoy, distress, and conquer the French colonies in Canada, and along the Ohio and Mississippi.

---

What happened to France and England?

What is always the object of two countries at war?



HUNTING THE OP.SSUM.

## CHAPTER XIX.

## PARLEY TELLS OF THE OLD FRENCH WAR.

WHEN the war broke out between England and France the people of the French and English colonies began to fight each other.



CRUEL AND INHUMAN CONDUCT OF THE INDIANS.

The French engaged large numbers of Indians to assist them, and, instigated by hatred towards the English, for

---

What happened when the war broke out in 1756?



having got possession of their lands, they committed the most cruel and inhuman outrages.

But of these outrages I cannot tell you more now ; I can only describe to you the capture of Quebec, which was the most remarkable event of the war.

This city was the capital of the French settlements in Canada, and is now a large town belonging to the English. It was strongly fortified, and defended by a large army, commanded by a brave French officer, whose name was Montcalm.

But General Wolfe, commander of the English army, was a very bold general, and he determined to attack them.

The French army, consisting of a large number of men, occupied the garrisons and forts in and about Quebec.

Near the city, and overlooking it, was a lofty hill or eminence, called the Heights of Abraham.

General Wolfe, having made several unsuccessful attacks

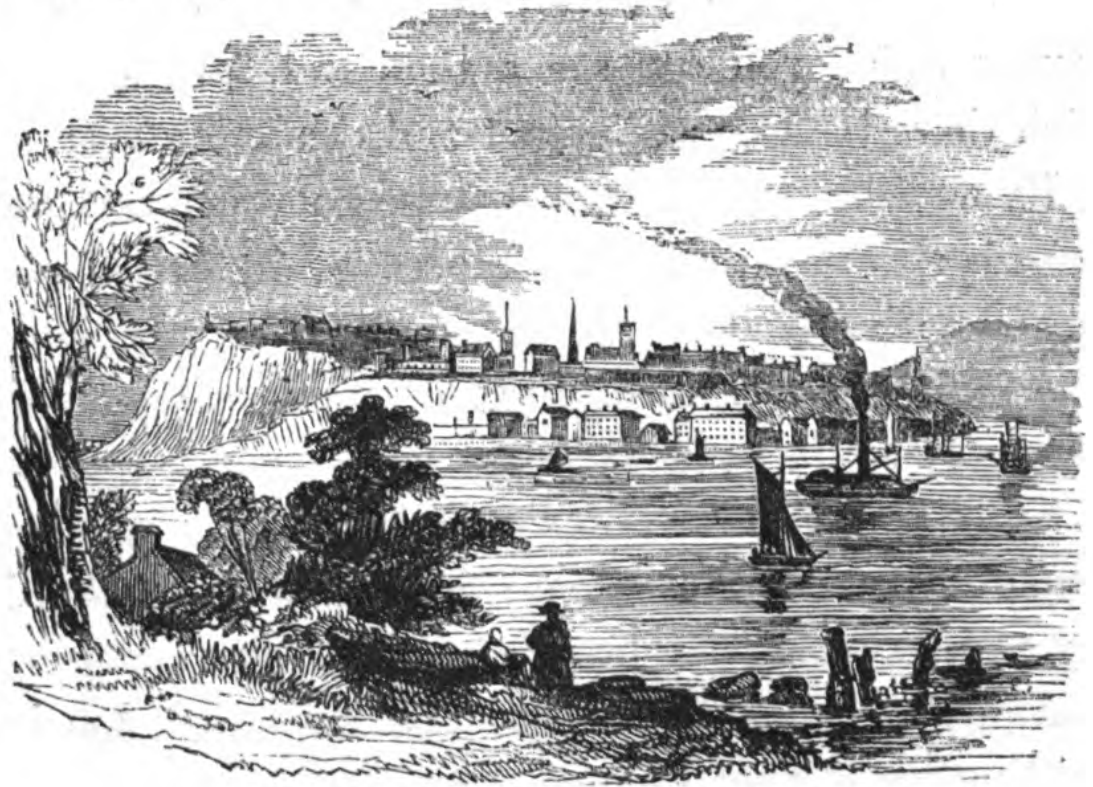
---

What did the French do respecting the Indians in this war? What was the consequence? What was the most remarkable event of this war? What can you say of Quebec? Who commanded the army that defended Quebec? Who commanded the English army? What sort of a general was Montcalm?

What sort of a general was Wolfe? What did the French army occupy? How are the heights of Abraham situated? What did Wolfe determine to do?



on the French, determined, if possible, to draw up his army on the top of these heights.



VIEW OF QUEBEC.

Accordingly, in the night, his soldiers climbed up the hill, and in the morning were ready for battle.

About ten o'clock the conflict began. You have never seen a battle, and can scarcely imagine what it is.

You must conceive thousands of soldiers, divided into two great portions, with swords, and guns, and cannon.

At length the two armies approach each other, and the

---

What, accordingly, did his soldiers do? At what time did the conflict begin? Describe a battle.

fight begins. The muskets are fired, and the cannon are discharged.

The whole scene is covered with a cloud of thick smoke, through which you can see a thousand flashes, and from which there issues an incessant and deafening roar.

By and by, there is a momentary pause; the cloud of smoke is slowly lifted up on the air, and you see the field strewn with the bodies of the men that are dying and dead.

Again the battle continues; again the smoke covers the fight; and again the thunder of the cannon is heard.

Such was the battle on the Heights of Abraham. The French army made a brave onset upon the English, but they were cut down in hundreds.

Again and again they returned to the attack, but in vain. The English still maintained their ground, and the French were beaten, and obliged to fly.

The brave General Wolfe was wounded, and died on the field of battle. Montcalm, the French general, was also wounded, and died in a short time.

The victory was proclaimed in favour of the English.

---

What was the fate of General Wolfe in the battle at Quebec?  
What was the fate of Montcalm?

In whose favour was the victory proclaimed?

A thousand Frenchmen were killed, and a thousand were taken prisoners.



DEATH OF GENERAL WOLFE.

In five days after the victory, Quebec was surrendered,

---

How many Frenchmen were killed? How many taken prisoners?  
In how many days after the battle was Quebec given up to the English?

or given up to the English, and ever since has belonged to them.

It was during this war, and not long after the surrender of Quebec, that the town of Montreal and the other French possessions in Canada were taken by the English, and have ever since remained in their possession.

---

## CHAPTER XX.

### PARLEY TELLS ABOUT THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

I MUST now relate to you the most interesting part of American history ; I mean the Revolutionary War. But, before I can make you fully understand this, I must give a few explanations.

You will remember that the English settlements in North America were called *colonies*, that is, they were subject to the government of England, and formed part of its dominions.

---

To whom has Quebec ever since belonged? When was it that the French possessions in Canada were taken by the English? To whom have they belonged since? What is the most interesting part of American history? What were the English settlements in America called? What government were they subject to?



The people acknowledged the authority of the king of England, and paid obedience to him, and expected, of course, his protection.

But it happened that the king and government of England made laws, and imposed burdens, which the people thought calculated to injure them.

The English government imagined that the colonies were weak and timid, and that they would submit to anything that the government of England should require of them. In this, you will see, they were mistaken.

As the colonies had been protected by England; as many of the people had been born and educated there; and as nearly the whole of them were descended from English ancestors, the attachment of the colonists to England was very strong.

England seemed to them their home, and all of us, you

---

Whose authority did the people acknowledge?

What did they of course expect from the king?

What was the conduct of the king and government of England toward the colonies?

What kind of laws did they make?

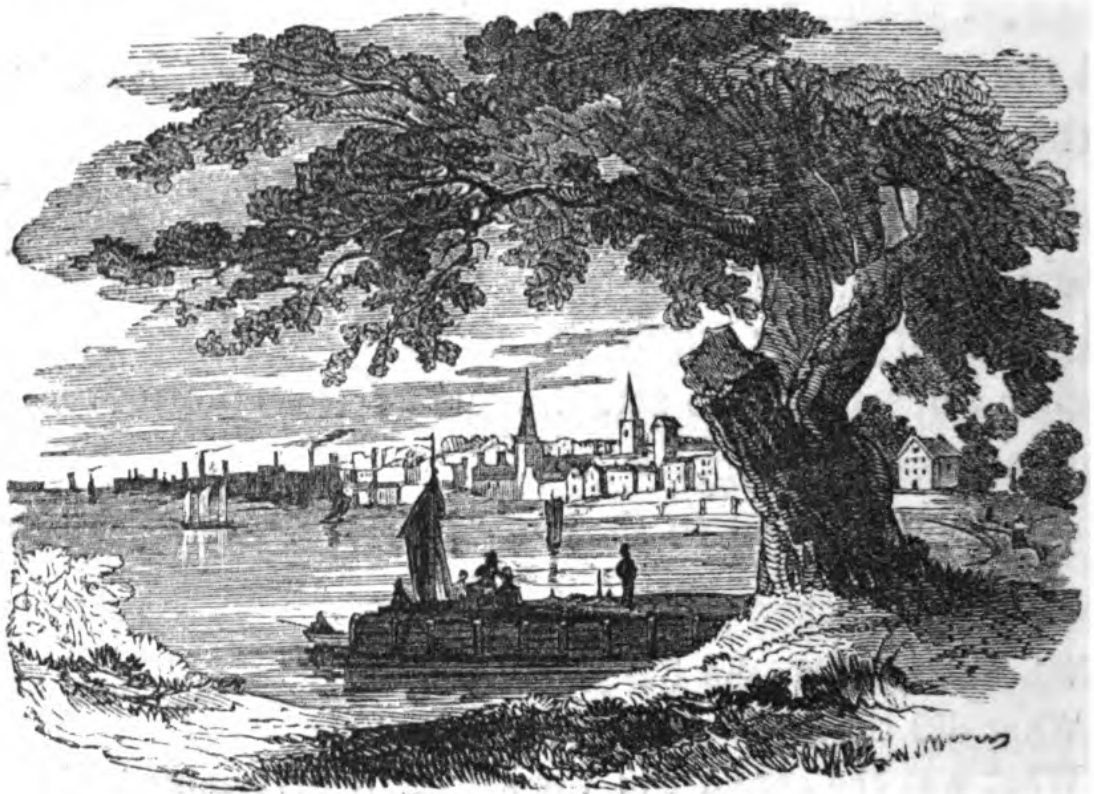
How, in short, did they act toward the country? What was their idea?

What can you say of the attachment of the people in America to England?



know, are fond of home. They, therefore, endured much from the English government, contenting themselves with only sending to the king earnest prayers, that he would treat them with kindness and justice.

But as no answer was returned to these prayers, save what they considered to be increased hardships, the people resolved that they would no longer acknowledge the right



VIEW OF PHILADELPHIA.

---

What, therefore, did they endure?

With what did the colonies content themselves?

What followed their prayers?

On what did the people resolve?

of England to rule over them, and that they would govern themselves.

Accordingly, they sent some of their wisest men to Philadelphia. These men, when assembled, were called a Congress.

This congress, on the fourth of July, 1776, declared that the people of this country would no longer submit to the government of Great Britain, and that ever after they should be free and independent.

In this act of America, we see the natural workings of the human heart: when man is weak he submits; as he gains strength he ventures to complain; and when he becomes powerful he resists. It is not only thus with men individually, but with colonies and countries.

This Declaration of Independence, as it is called, is celebrated every year, in the United States, on the fourth of July, that being the day on which the declaration was made. Thus the colonies became an independent nation.

But before that independence was established, and

---

What, accordingly, did the people do?

What did the congress do?

When did they make this declaration?

What is this declaration called? When is it celebrated?

What did the colonies thus become?

How long did the war of the Revolution last?

before it was acknowledged by Great Britain, the colonists had to pass through a war, which lasted for eight years. The story of this war I will now tell you.

---

## CHAPTER XXI.

### THE STORY OF THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

THE revolutionary war began in 1775. The English government, fearing that the people of America would resist their authority, sent a large number of soldiers to prevent it. These soldiers were placed in Boston.

It happened that there were some military stores, that is, powder, ball, guns, &c., at Concord, a town about sixteen miles from Boston. Governor Gage, the English commander, wished to have those stores destroyed, as they belonged to the Americans.

---

When did this war begin? What did the English government do? Where were their soldiers placed? What happened to be at Concord?

What did Governor Gage wish? Who was Governor Gage? What did Governor Gage do?

Accordingly, he sent some soldiers, on the 19th of April, 1775, to destroy them. When these soldiers got to Lexington, on their way to Concord, they found a good many people, alarmed by the expedition, gathered about the church.

One of the English officers, Major Pitcairn, rode up to these people, and exclaimed, "Disperse, you rebels!" At the same time, some of his soldiers fired upon the people, and killed a number of them.

Now, the Americans did not like to have their people killed by English soldiers. Would it not make you angry, if soldiers should come and shoot your dear fathers or your brothers?

Certainly it would; and so the Americans were excited to resistance by this act of the English soldiers, and they determined to resent and revenge it.

They ran to their houses; they seized their guns, and, hurrying back in crowds, they commenced a sharp attack upon the English troops.

What did these soldiers find when they got to Lexington?

What did Major Pitcairn do?

What did some of the English soldiers do?

What were the Americans excited to by the expedition of the English soldiers to Lexington? What did they do?



These soon found it necessary to turn about, and fly to Boston for safety. The Americans pursued them; and the English soldiers, urged by the danger, pushed on with a rapid step, and soon reached Boston.

This affair began the revolutionary war. The people now saw the necessity of making resistance.

Was it not rather an odd circumstance that the first blood that was shed between England and America, should be shed at a place called *Concord*?

Animated by a love of their country, and of liberty, they left their quiet homes, bade adieu to their families, and, with a resolute purpose of securing what they deemed their rights, they flocked to the field of battle.

The British troops being stationed in Boston, the Americans assembled their forces in that neighbourhood.

The British troops had possession of the town, and it was difficult for me to leave it. But I was determined to join the American forces.

It was expected that there would soon be a great

---

What did the English troops find it necessary to do?

What did they do? What did the Lexington affair begin?

What necessity did the people now see?

By what were they animated? Thus animated, what did they do? Where were the British troops stationed? Where did the Americans assemble their soldiers? What was it expected would soon take place?



battle. There is a high hill near Boston, called Bunker's Hill. The top of this hill can be seen from Boston.

One morning, it was discovered that the American troops had got possession of the hill, and, during the night, had thrown up a small breastwork of earth and turf.

Governor Gage immediately perceived that he must drive the Americans from this hill, if possible. Accordingly, the English troops were ordered to proceed to the spot.

That was a busy morning in Boston. The people hurried along the streets with breathless haste, and countenances of deep anxiety.

Heavy columns of troops poured along the town, and the deep swell of martial music filled the air. Amid all this, a heavy sound of cannon, at no great distance, was distinctly heard.

---

What high hill can you see from Boston?

What was discovered one morning? What did Governor Gage perceive? What were the English troops, accordingly, ordered to do? What did the people of Boston do that morning? What were seen and heard?

## CHAPTER XXII.

PARLEY CONTINUES TO TELL OF THE AMERICAN  
REVOLUTION.

I COULD remain inactive no longer. I proceeded with three of my companions, among whom was James Jenkins, to a spot where we had secreted a small boat, in which we rowed over to Cambridge, a town on the other side of the bay.

Here we landed, and proceeded to join the troops on the top of Bunker's Hill. From this place we could see the British forces as they approached.

They landed on a point at no great distance from us. They were soon formed, and began their march up the hill.

Nothing could exceed the regularity with which they approached. They were all dressed in red coats and white pantaloons. It was a bright day, and their guns glittered in the sun.

---

What did Parley now do in company with James Jenkins?

Where did they proceed to?

Where did the British troops land?

In what manner did the British troops advance?

How were they dressed?

In long, straight lines, and with a bold and steady march, they advanced towards the breastwork, behind which the Americans lay.

Jenkins and myself were among them, side by side. It was an anxious moment. Not a word was said. We lay with our guns loaded, and our fingers placed ready to send the bullets in the face of the approaching enemy.

We saw them; they were so near, that we could look them in the face. Yet not a word was said. We felt their heavy tread shake the little mound behind which we lay.

Now the signal was given; every gun was levelled, and an instantaneous blaze ran like lightning along the breastwork. More than a thousand muskets poured their deadly shot upon the very breast of the British line.

The effect was astounding; many an English soldier was stretched instantly on the earth, and the remainder first wavered, and then turned, and fled from the dead spot.

But the English troops were brave men, and they soon renewed the attack. It was answered as before, and again

---

How did they advance?

How were the American troops situated?

How did the American troops lie?

When the signal was given, what happened?

What was the effect? But what did the English troops soon do?

they retired. But, at length, the Americans, having exhausted their powder and ball, were forced to retreat.

With slow and reluctant steps they descended the hill, leaving the British in possession of it. Many of the English were killed, and but very few of the Americans. This was the famous battle of Bunker's Hill.

Now the war was begun in earnest. The Americans set about making arrangements to defend themselves, and, if possible, drive the British troops from the country.

They accordingly appointed George Washington, a wise and brave man, to command the American forces, and took measures to raise a large and powerful army.

At the same time, the government of England, filled with resentment, and resolving to subdue the rebellious



WASHINGTON.

---

What happened in consequence of the Americans having exhausted their powder and ball? What did the Americans do? What battle was this?

What did the Americans now set about doing?

Whom did they appoint to command the American army?

What was the character of Washington?

colonies, sent a great many ships, and many thousands of soldiers, to assist in accomplishing their wishes.

---

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### PARLEY TELLS OF HIS STRANGE ADVENTURES AMONG THE INDIANS.

I CANNOT now tell you of all the battles that were fought during this bloody war, but I will tell you an interesting story of what happened to myself. It was a little more than two years after the battle of Bunker's Hill. Jenkins and I had been stationed at a small fort in the state of New York, on the shore of Lake Ontario.

We determined to accompany a detachment which was going to join the American troops under General Gates who were then near Saratoga, and who soon expected to

---

What did the government of England do at the same time?

Where had Parley and Jenkins been stationed after the battle of Bunker's Hill?

Will you tell me the story of Parley's being taken by the Indians? If you will learn it by heart, you can repeat it all.



meet a large British army advancing from Canada, under General Burgoyne.

Accordingly we set out. The detachment consisted of about sixty men. The second day after our departure, as we were passing along a sort of military road, cut through the woods, we were startled by the report of a musket from an adjacent thicket.

The sun had set a little before, and it was now nearly dark. We could, of course, see no one in the woods, nor had we suspected that an enemy could be near us.

We had no doubt, however, that the shot proceeded from Indians who were lurking in the woods, and who were about to attack us.

It happened at the moment that Jenkins and I were marching together a few yards behind the other men. The instant I heard the report of the musket, I saw Jenkins stop, and lay his hand quickly upon his side.

I sprang towards him, feeling sure that the bullet had wounded him. I was a moment too late to prevent his falling!

I put my arms around him, and raised his head. He instantly exclaimed, "I am wounded, and must die: leave me! The Indians are around us; their next bullet will go through your heart; join the troops, and save yourself!"

I had no time to answer, for four Indians at the moment sprung from the bushes, seized me, and hurried me from the spot. I had no time for resistance; the whole passed in an instant.

I exerted myself a little to ascertain the strength of my captors, but found that I was strongly grasped by two stout men, one on each side.

It was dark, and I could only perceive that they were savages, and that they were urging me through a forest of tall trees, without underwood.

After proceeding at this rapid pace for about a quarter of an hour, we stopped, and my hands were bound behind me.

We then pressed on as before, and my speed was occasionally increased by a rude push from the savages. In this way we travelled about an hour, when we again stopped.

The Indians, who had been silent before, now began to talk to themselves. After some apparent consultation, they permitted me to sit down, and sat down themselves.

Having remained about two hours, we were joined by a dozen more Indians. In company with these, we now resumed our march, and went forward at a rapid pace.

As we were travelling through woods, in the night, my hands being tied behind me, I found it extremely difficult

to keep up with the Indians, and whenever I faltered, they did not fail to strike me.

At length the morning began to dawn, and we made a halt. The Indians, who had hitherto spoken in their own language, now asked me a few questions in English.

In return, I made some inquiries of them, which they refused to answer. All that I could learn respecting my own fate was, that I should be reserved for the decision of their chief, who would arrive the next day.

In the meantime, as if to torment me, they tied me to a tree, and some of the young Indians tried their skill in shooting arrows at me.



PARLEY SHOT AT BY THE YOUNG INDIANS.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

## PARLEY'S ADVENTURES CONTINUED.

SEVERAL of the arrows came very near me, and one or two of them hit me, and wounded me, but not very severely.

When the arrows hit me, the Indians laughed very heartily, and my misery seemed to afford them great pleasure.

I should have been in despair, and given myself up for lost, but I had often, before, been in danger, and had always escaped.

I had also found that danger, when met with courage, seemed to be lessened, and that evils, sustained with resolution, always disappeared or diminished.

I placed confidence in heaven, too, and felt persuaded that a kind Providence would rescue me. So I bore the wounds of the Indians' arrows with fortitude, and could not but scorn and pity the wretches who took delight in my distress.

At length they seemed weary of their cruel sport, and left me tied to the tree, while they went to their meal.

After finishing this they offered me some broiled deer's flesh, but I was too closely tied to permit me to eat.

They then unbound me, but my hands were so swollen



that I could not use them. I was very hungry, however, and was able to eat a little.

At length night came on. I had resolved, if possible to escape during the night.

The chief was expected the next morning, and, from what I knew of the Indians, I had little doubt that I should be burned to death when he came, unless I could get away before his return.

I determined, therefore, to avail myself of the least chance of escape, if any should offer. The place where we were was the high, rocky bank of a small river. My plan was to escape silently, if I could, when all were asleep.

If that could not be done, I intended to spring suddenly from my keepers, and leap over the rocks into the river, hoping, if I was not dashed to pieces, to elude pursuit in the darkness, and make good my escape.

With these purposes in my mind, I waited impatiently for the time when the savages should be asleep.

It was midnight before they went to rest. I was strongly bound, and laid on the ground, with about twelve Indians around me.

At length they all seemed asleep. I then exerted myself to break the bark cords that tied me. I had nearly succeeded, when one of the Indians suddenly sprung up, and came towards me with a hatchet lifted over my head.



I expected that he would strike me, but he did not. He examined my cords, and as they seemed to be tight, and as I appeared to be asleep, he left me, and laid himself again on the ground.

Soon all were asleep. Now, thought I, is the moment which decides whether I live or die! I made a desperate effort, and broke the cords around my hands.

I then untied those that were around my feet, and stepped cautiously over the sleeping Indians.

One of them muttered in his sleep, and stirred, as if he was going to wake, but he did not. I took one of the Indians' muskets, which stood by a tree, and, with a noiseless step and breathless anxiety, I left the spot.

I had not been gone more than a quarter of an hour, when I heard a shout among the Indians, which was immediately followed by a mingled yell, that echoed through the forest.

I now knew that my escape was discovered. I was on the bank of the river, and surrounded by rocks. I crept between two large rocks and lay still. I soon heard the Indians coming in the direction where I was.

Two or three passed so close to me that I could have touched them with my hand. At length one of them saw me, and levelled his musket at me, but hesitated to fire.

I took advantage of the moment, and sprung over the

bank into the river. I swam across the stream, carrying the musket in one hand, and paddled with the other.

I had scarcely got across, when I heard two or three savages splash into the opposite side of the water.

I climbed up the steep bank, and, plunging into the woods, I ran with all my force. But I was stiff from my wounds, and from having been so tightly bound.

Of course the swift Indians soon overtook me, and I was again reduced to captivity. I was now taken back to the place from which I had escaped, and bound, but more securely than before.



THE PURSUIT.

## CHAPTER XXV.

## PARLEY'S ADVENTURES CONTINUED.

AT length the morning came, and the chief of the tribe arrived, with several other Indians. He was an old man, but still strong and active.

The Indians told him of my capture and attempt to escape, and asked him what should be my fate. Having heard the story, he came near to me, and, in a stern voice, he spoke as follows:—

“White man,” said he, “listen to me! Once the red man was king over these woods and waters. The mountains and rivers were then the red man’s, and then he was rich and happy.

“At length the white men, thy fathers, came. The red man made them welcome. But they were ungrateful and treacherous.

“When they grew strong, they drove the red men over the mountains, and took their lands. I was still the white man’s friend.

“But see here,” said he, pointing to a scar on his

breast ; “ this is the mark of a white man’s bullet. I had harmed him not ; I had lived among them, and served them. But they shot at me as if I were a wild cat.



WAMPUM TELLING HIS STORY.

“ White man,” said he, “ listen. I was once the white man’s friend ; I am now his enemy. Think no more of escape. This hour you shall die.”

“ Chief,” said I, “ do as you like ! If it is God’s will that I die, I shall die contented. My father was a friend to the red men, and his son has never harmed them.

“ My father saved the life of a red man, and now you will kill his son. If it will make an Indian chief happy to



spill the blood of one whose father saved a red man's life, then kill me; I am ready to die.

“And my soul will go to the Great Spirit, and will say to him, ‘My father was a benefactor to the red men, and they murdered his son!’”

“Speak,” said the chief, “where did your father live?” “In Boston,” said I. “And who was the Indian whose life he saved?” “His name was Wampum,” I replied.

“White man,” said he, “look at me! I am Wampum; I know you; you were the boy who came to my wigwam at Holyoke. You were the boy who went with me to the Great Falls. It was your father who saved my life, and shall I suffer his son to die?”

“Brethren,” said Wampum, speaking to the Indians, “I was a stranger in a distant city of the white men. I drank their fire-water,\* and it made me wild.

“I struck a sailor, and he was angry. He came upon me with twelve men. They beat me down, and trampled upon me. They would have killed me, but a white man, with a strong arm, beat them off. The friend of the red men saved my life. Here is his son; shall he die?”

The Indians answered by unbinding my hands and feet. “Go,” said Wampum, “go to your friends, and tell them that the red men will not forget kindness.

---

\* The Indians call rum “fire-water.”



“Tell them, that we will repay to the children the good deeds of their fathers. We war only with the wicked: we seek only the blood of our enemies.”

Saying this, he returned me my gun, gave me a bag of dried deer's flesh, and told me I was at liberty to go. “Keep along the bank of this river,” said he, “and three days' journey will bring you to the American camp.”

Having expressed my thankfulness to the chief, I departed. I found no difficulty in proceeding along the banks of the river. I travelled all day without accident. At night I made a little fire and slept by it.

The next day I proceeded on my journey, and at evening, found myself among wild hills and rocks, between which the river dashed in violent cascades.

I was looking about for a place to sleep during the night, when I perceived a man approaching me. His face was pale, and wore a look of strange wildness.

What was my astonishment to discover this to be James Jenkins, whom I had supposed killed three days before!

He told me he had been left on the ground for dead, but was only wounded. He had lain on the spot a night and day, and since that time had wandered about in the woods.

He was very weak from hunger and loss of blood; but, after eating some of my dried deer's flesh, he slept quietly through the night, and found himself able to accompany me, the next morning, on my journey, at a slow pace.

In three days we arrived at the American camp, and joined our regiment under the command of General Gates.

---

## CHAPTER XXVI.

### PARLEY TELLS MORE ABOUT THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

It was now a time of great interest in the army. General Burgoyne, the English commander, with about six thousand men, lay at no great distance.

There had been a good deal of fighting between this army and the American forces under General Gates.

About a month after Jenkins and I had arrived, the

---

Who was General Burgoyne?

How many men had he under his command?

two armies met. They fought for a long time, and many hundreds were killed, but neither was decidedly victorious.

General Burgoyne was, at last, surrounded with difficulties, and obliged to surrender, and give himself up, with his six thousand soldiers, to General Gates, who made them prisoners of war.

These events, you will remember, took place near Saratoga, in the state of New York, in the autumn of 1777.

This was a great event for the Americans, and gave them courage to prosecute the war with spirit.

I should be glad to tell you of the many battles that were fought, and of the many brave deeds that were done.

You will, sometime or other, no doubt, read the history of these things, and admire the noble spirit of your forefathers.

To their courage and fortitude, you, who now live and

---

What happened about a month after Parley and Jenkins arrived at the camp?

How was General Burgoyne now situated?

What did General Burgoyne do?

Where did these events happen? When did they happen?

enjoy happiness, peace, and freedom, are indebted for these blessings.

Let their example never be forgotten; and if your native country should ever be invaded by enemies, be sure to imitate the conduct of those who forgot every private interest and feeling, in the desire to protect their country.

After the capture of Burgoyne I left the army, and returned to Boston. Here I remained till the autumn of 1781.

I then joined the army, and was present at the capture of the British army at Yorktown, under Lord Cornwallis.

This was the greatest and most important event of the revolutionary war. The circumstances were these:—

Lord Cornwallis, at the head of seven thousand British troops, was at Yorktown, in Virginia. To this place General Washington marched, at the head of the American army, determined, if possible, to overcome and capture the British.

He soon began to attack, and, in a few days,

---

What effect had this on the Americans?

Where was Lord Cornwallis when he was captured with the British army?

How many British troops had Lord Cornwallis?

Lord Cornwallis, with seven thousand soldiers, gave himself up to General Washington.

This was the last great event of the American war. England now saw that she could not conquer America. Accordingly she gave up the idea, and acknowledged its independence.



LORD CORNWALLIS.

Such was the war called the American Revolution.

The independence of the United States being thus secured it has gone on in happiness and prosperity. It has once since been engaged in war with England, but that lasted only a short time ; peace was soon established between the two countries.

We may now hope that war will never break out again

Who marched against the British at the head of the American army?

What did Washington do?

What did Lord Cornwallis do?

What did England now perceive?

What, accordingly, did she do?

What has happened to America since her independence was secured? Has it been since involved in war? With what country?



between England and America, The people of the two countries speak the same language, believe in the same religion, and live in a similar manner. Why, then, should they quarrel? Why should they not live in peace, and do each other good, rather than go to war and do each other all the harm they can?

England is a fine country; if you should ever go there, you will see a great deal to admire in the people and the country. Every part of the land is finely cultivated, and it is covered with towns, cities, and villages.

The people are intelligent, and many are very learned and wise. Some of them live in a magnificent style; and in no part of the world are there more beautiful gardens, country seats, and fine roads.

England is not only a very beautiful country, but it is the richest and most powerful nation on the globe. Many of the clothes we wear in America, and many articles which we use for comfort and pleasure, are manufactured in England; in no part of the world are the arts carried to such perfection. We see, therefore, that we should entertain a great regard for England, and we may all be proud that our forefathers came from that country.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

## PARLEY CONCLUDES HIS REMARKS ON AMERICA.



CITY OF WASHINGTON.

OURS is now a great and powerful nation. It is called the United States of America, and contains nearly twenty-three millions of people. They are governed by a President and Congress, who meet every winter at Washington to make laws.

---

Is not ours now a great and powerful nation? What is it called?

The Congress consists of several hundred men, some from each state, who assemble in a building called the Capitol.

The United States now embraces twenty-four states, each separate and distinct, having a governor of its own, yet all united under the general government of the President and Congress.

The names of these states are as follows : Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut. These states, taken together, are usually called New England.

New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware, are usually called the Middle States.

Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Maryland and Mississippi, are called the Southern States.

---

How is our country governed ?

Where does Congress meet ?

What does Congress meet for ?

Of what does Congress consist ?

Where does Congress assemble ?

How many separate states are there now in the United States ?

Does each state have a separate governor ?

What are the names of those states called New England ?

What are the names of the Middle States? The Southern?  
The Western?

Ohio, Tennessee, Kentucky, Indiana, Illinois, Louisiana, and Missouri, are called the Western States.

To these may be added Oregon, and the Texas; the latter comprising, of itself, a district of 100,000 square miles, southward of the Gulf of Mexico.

I have now finished my stories about America. I have told you how Columbus discovered America, how Cortez conquered Mexico, and how Pizarro conquered Peru.

You will recollect that I have told you of the settlement of Virginia, New York, New England, Delaware, Maryland, and Pennsylvania, and that I have described the old French war, and the Revolutionary war. All these points are worthy of a little reflection.

You would like, I dare say, before I have done with America, to know a little about California, if it be only an account of the gold which has been found there.

California is in North America. It is divided into New and Old California, and both parts are washed by the waters of the Pacific Ocean. The following account has been given by a friend of mine.

“Have you heard of California; that part of North America which has become famous for the gold that

---

Will you repeat, or tell over, the principal things I have told you about America?



abounds there? Have you heard that gold is picked up on the ground, dug out of the earth, and found in the beds of the rivers? And are you aware that hundreds, thousands, nay, tens of thousands of people, from different parts of the world, have set off with all speed to California? Reports have reached us that some who have gone out to California have amassed great wealth. This may be true. I am not, however, about to speak of what *may* be true, but what *is* true. You may depend on the correctness of my tidings from California.

“Among the many adventurers who quitted England for the gold coast, where such crowds had already preceded him, was a young man of good education, and of respectable connexions whom I knew. He talked over his plans with me, and told me of his prospects; and I shook hands with him before he went aboard the vessel that was to bear him from his native land, heartily wishing that he was embarking on a better enterprise.

“Time rolled rapidly on, and my thoughts often winged their way to California. At last came the news that the adventurer had arrived in America; then, that five hundred of the party had died of cholera; and, afterwards, that my poor friend was making his way, with a few others, over the mountains. From this time I heard nothing of him, till about a week ago, when, to my



surprise, it was told me that the day before he had arrived from California.

“And now you will be wanting to know the amount of the treasure that he brought back with him. Whether it was in money, in lumps of gold, or in gold dust; whether it was packed up in barrels or in boxes; and whether the boxes and the barrels were large or small, few or many. You shall know all that I can tell you.

“When Pizarro made the conquest of Peru, he took the king prisoner, in order that the people might ransom him; and so unreasonable was he, that he required for his ransom a room full of gold; refusing, even after he had obtained it, to set the monarch at liberty. The love of money had entered into Pizarro's soul, and the word of God says, that ‘the love of money is the root of all evil.’

“But though Pizarro obtained so much gold, we must not suppose that every one who leaves his native land in search of wealth is equally successful. Some get much, some little, and others get none at all.

“When people become rich suddenly, they usually spend their money freely; sometimes in comforts, and oftentimes in useless luxuries. My poor friend, however, had not laid out a pound, either in luxuries or comforts; and for this good reason, he had not a pound to lay out. After all his toil and danger, and in spite of his princely

expectations, he came back without a single shilling. He had lost all the packages he had taken out with him, and his watch, and his money. He made his appearance in a sailor's jacket, trousers, and straw hat; without a shilling in his pocket, or a stocking on his foot; thankful, indeed, that he had escaped with his life. Thus had his dream of riches been brought to a close; thus had his golden vision of California ended!

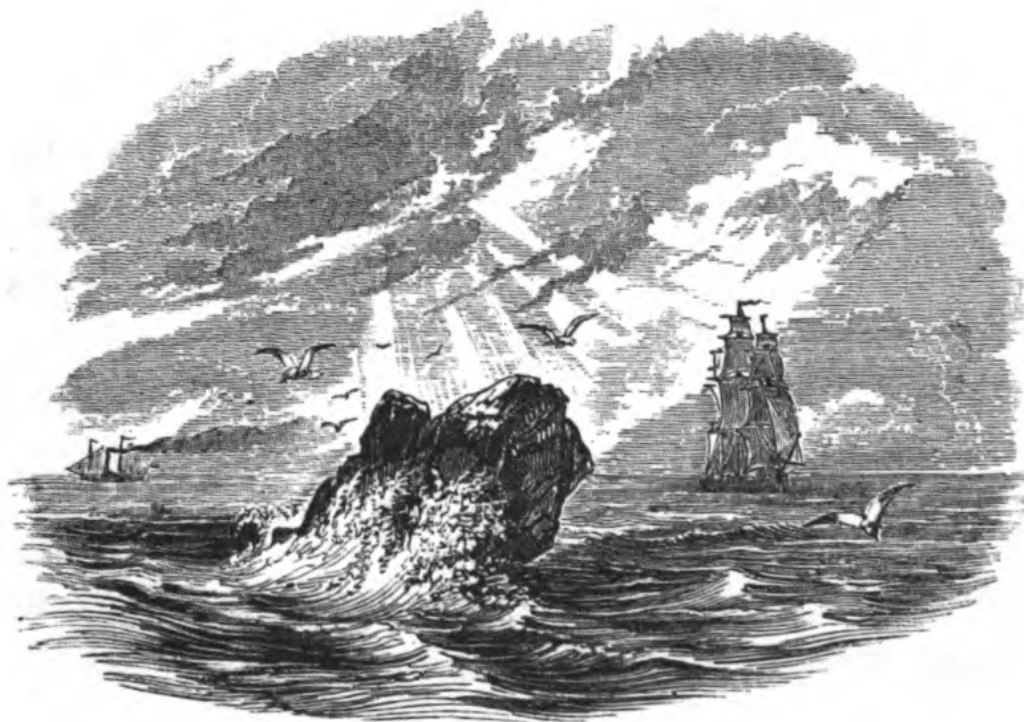
“Oh! this hastening to be rich is a sad mistake, and it brings sad misfortunes on those who commit it. A spirit of industry, a contented mind, and a grateful heart, are worth more than a gold mine ten times told.”



THE ESCAPE OF THE ADVENTURER.



PETER PARLEY'S  
TALES ABOUT OCEANIA.



A SCENE IN THE GREAT PACIFIC OCEAN.





PETER PARLEY'S  
TALES ABOUT OCEANIA.

---

---

CHAPTER I.

PARLEY TELLS ABOUT OCEANIA.

I HAVE now said almost all that I have to say about the different parts of the world; yet a word or two must be spoken about Oceania, the fifth division of the world. Oceania, as you may remember, consists of Australasia and Polynesia: Australasia comprehending Australia, Van Diemen's Land, Norfolk Islands, New Guinea, New Zealand, and other places; and Polynesia embracing the Sandwich, Friendly, Ladrone, and other Islands in the Pacific Ocean.

Some time ago I met a sailor who had been at all these places. He told me a great deal more of them than I have now time to tell you.

Sailors go through many hardships in visiting distant countries. A poor fellow may tell you, in a few words, that he has just come from the South Seas and Van Diemen's Land; but it would take many words to tell you

half the dangers he may have passed through in his voyage. He may have had to bear heat and cold; calms and storms; dark nights and drenching rains; he may have contended with toil, and hunger, and thirst, and sharks, and shipwreck, and accidents of different kinds, though not a word about them escapes his lips.

I love to take a sailor by his hard hand, and to look on his weather-beaten face, for it puts me in mind of my own wandering life, and the scenes through which I have passed.

If you will look at the opposite map, you will see, on its western side, a very large island called New Holland. It is now often called Australia, and New South Wales. Well, this place was discovered by the Dutch about two hundred years ago. The largest island in the whole world, being between two and three thousand miles long.



CAPTAIN COOK.

Captain Cook visited and explored New Holland. The natives are very savage, and are almost as black as negroes.

They go naked, and daub their bodies with various

---

What strange customs have the natives of New Holland?

colours, hanging beads and shells around their necks and limbs.

I will tell you a curious thing about these people. The men, for the most part, deprive themselves of one of their upper fore teeth, and it is common for the women to cut off two joints of the little finger. Iron and coal, and valuable stones, have for many years been found in the country.

---

## CHAPTER II.

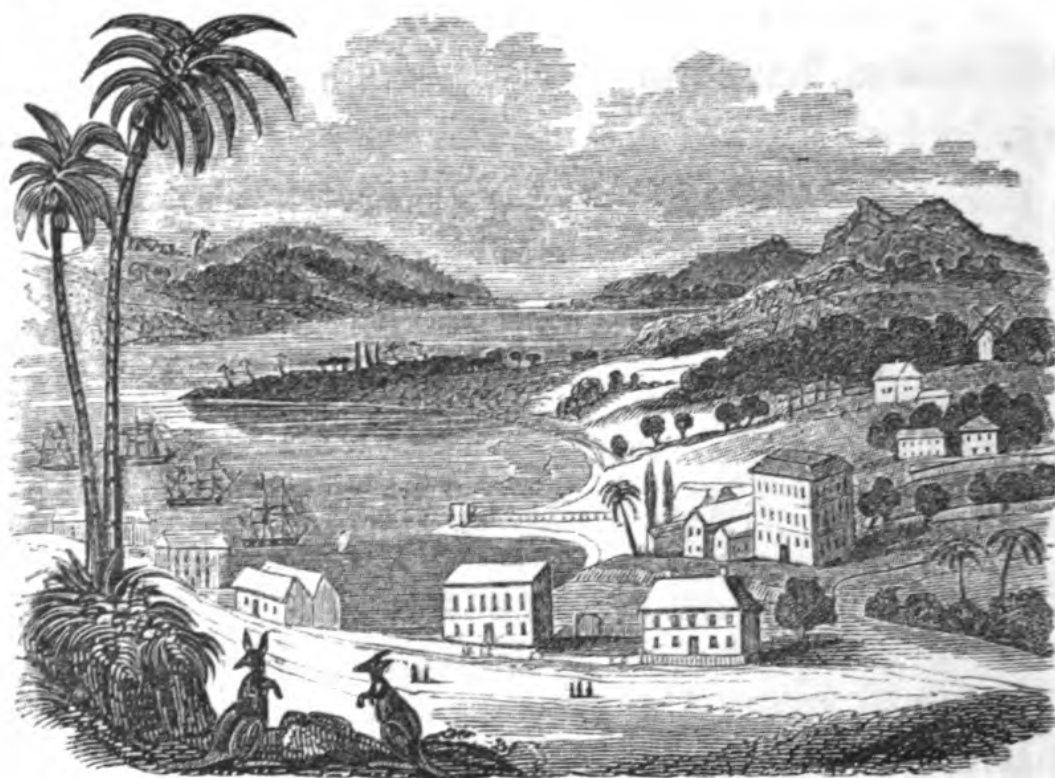
### PARLEY SPEAKS OF SYDNEY AND OTHER PLACES.

THERE are many Colonies in Australasia, and had I time, I would speak at large of New South Wales, South Australia, Western Australia, and Van Dieman's Land, but as it is I can say but little.

Sydney is the capital of New South Wales. Look at the map of it, and you will see that it is built on a cove in Port Jackson, on the east side of the island. This place is rising fast into wealth, and has many fine streets and public buildings.

Windsor, Richmond, Newcastle, Liverpool, Paramatta, and Bathurst, are all handsome towns.

The streets of Sydney are now macadamised; gas is introduced; and there are many steam vessels that trade among the islands, and to Van Diemen's Land. The staple



VIEW OF SYDNEY TOWN.

articles of commerce are oil and wool; the latter is highly esteemed by the manufacturers of Great Britain. There are in Sydney many fine churches, for the use of the members of the churches of England and Scotland; Roman Catholic, Methodists', Independents', and Quakers' chapels, &c.; also a college for teaching the higher branches of



education, and numerous public and private schools. May Sydney flourish, and her institutions be instruments, in the hands of God, to enlighten the aborigines of these distant lands! Opossums and Kangaroos abound in the interior of the country.



THE KANGAROO.

South Australia is a very desirable colony in many respects. Western Australia contains three settlements, Swan River, Australind, and King George's Sound.

I will just say here that the towns of Maitland in New South Wales; Melbourne and Geelong in Port Phillip;



Adelaide in South Australia; and Hobart Town and Lancaster in Van Diemen's Land, are all increasing very fast.

The character of Australia has lately been altogether altered by the gold discoveries which have been made. These gold fields, or "diggings," as they are called, have greatly drained the towns and country places of their population. Where gold is to be got people will go.

A curious sight it is to see the gold diggers at work in their holes, with their picks and shovels; or washing their gold in their cradles. "Rock, rock, rock! Swish, swash, swish!" is the sound that is continually heard; but I will say more of the gold discoveries in my next chapter.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### PARLEY TELLS OF THE GOLD DISCOVERIES OF AUSTRALIA.

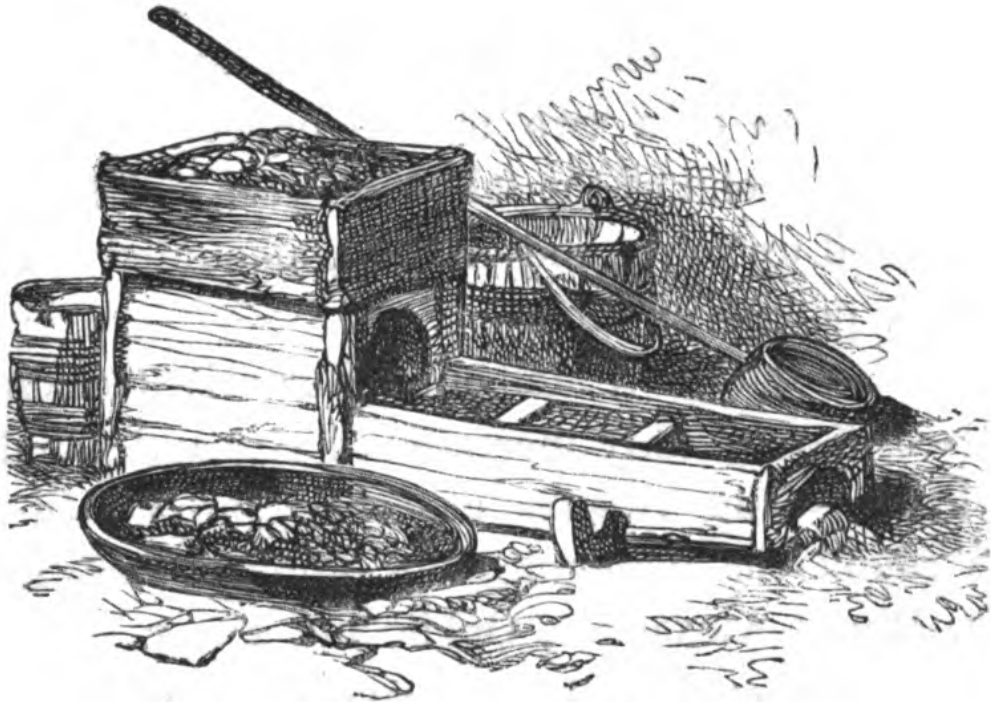
THE first discovery of gold in Australia took place in the year 1851. I will tell you how it happened.

A farmer of the name of Hargreaves, who had a farm near Bathurst, in Australia, went to California to dig for gold. He was much surprised to find that the rocks and layers of earth there were very like those in the district of





Conobolas, some twenty or thirty miles from Bathurst. "Who can tell," thought he, "but there is gold in Australia, as well as in California!"



GOLD-WASHING CRADLE.

You may be sure that when he went back to his own farm, he soon set to work searching for gold. In a month or two he found some. Making known his discovery to the Colonial Government he obtained a reward, and a valuable appointment. Not long after this, three blocks of quartz were found, containing 112 lbs. of pure gold, worth as much as four thousand pounds. This was at Murroo Creek, fifty miles north of Bathurst.

No wonder that the news ran like wild-fire. Crowds of

people began to dig for gold, and it was found in such abundance that many tons of it were transported in ships from Australia to Europe and America. You will be surprised when I tell you that from the gold-fields of two places only, Mount Alexander and Ballarat, in the district of Victoria, more than two million ounces of gold were found before the end of the following year. The worth of the gold found up to the end of 1852, amounted to eight or nine million pounds sterling.

Since then Bathurst, Melbourne, Victoria, Geelong, and other places have greatly increased in size and population; while hamlets and villages are springing up in all directions round the "diggings" of Forest Creek, Bingara, Ballarat, Mount Alexander, Ophir, and Turon.

The sailor that I spoke of, gave me the following account of his adventures at the "diggings" visited by him.

"If a man is willing to work, and has a little patience, he may get gold; but whether he will be able to keep it, or not, is another thing. I tried Forest Creek, and Mount Alexander, and Ballarat, and all turned out to be good places.

"At Forest Creek I worked in partnership with two or three messmates, who had agreed to go share and share alike with me in what we should find; but just when I was getting rich, and thinking of leaving the 'diggings,' my



two rascally messmates plundered me of my all, by running off with the gold we had obtained.

“ At Mount Alexander I worked by myself, having had enough of partnership, and soon had once more a heap of gold. There were about ten or a dozen other diggers who had been as lucky as myself, and we all agreed to leave the place together with our treasure, and stand by one another in case we were attacked.

“ It was towards sundown, that we were all sitting on the grass taking refreshment, with a sword on each side of us, when a volley was fired among us from an unseen enemy. Being well armed, those of us who were not wounded sprang to our feet, and set off in pursuit of our murderous foes, leaving only two of our company with the cart containing our gold, but no sooner had we quitted the place, than a set of villains belonging to the same gang, who had fired on us, rushed from the opposite wood, and bore away our cart, and got clear off with the booty.

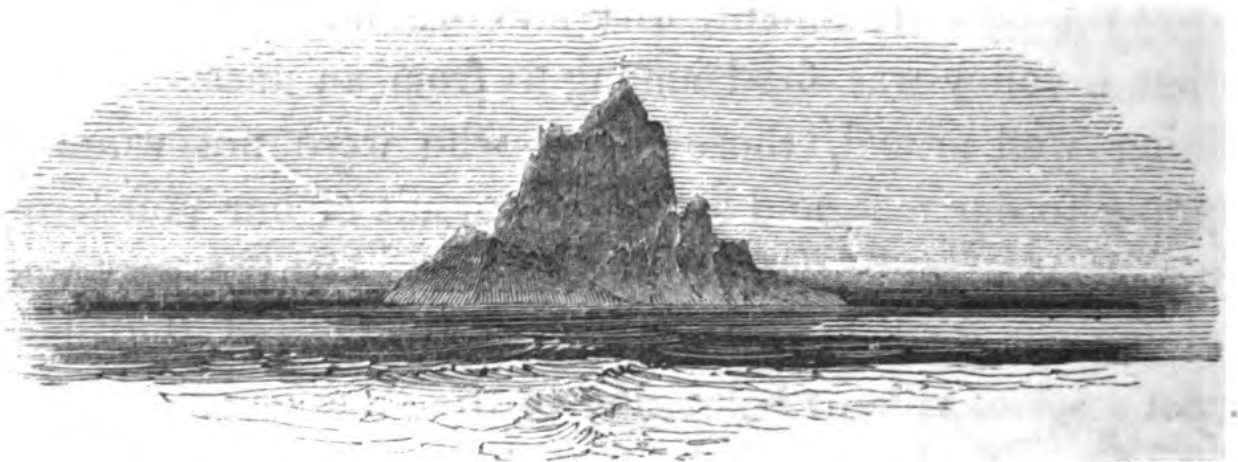
“ I next worked in the Canadian Gully, two or three miles from Ballarat; the same place where a mass of gold was found, veined with quartz, weighing 134 lbs. Again I got gold, and arrived safe with it at Melbourne; but light come, light go: at Melbourne I met with shipmates and old acquaintances, who led me on from one spree to another, till I soon was as poor as a rat on a raft.

“To thrive as a gold-digger, a man must have two things, good luck and good conduct; I had the one, but not the other. Take the year round, I should get as much money as a sailor before the mast, as I should at the ‘diggings.’”

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### PARLEY TELLS OF VAN DIEMEN'S LAND.

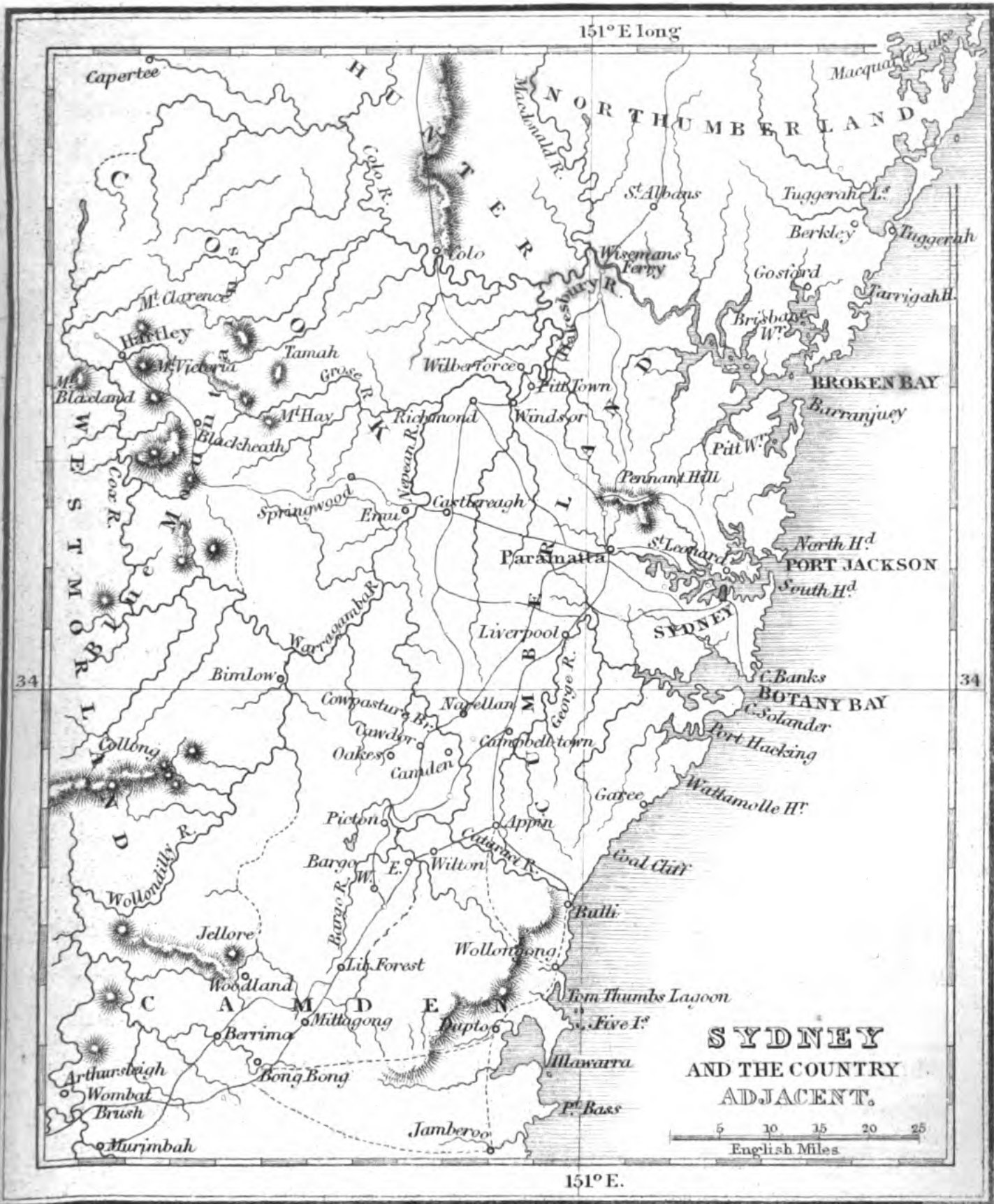


ROCK IN THE PACIFIC OCEAN.

VAN DIEMEN'S LAND was discovered by the Dutch in 1644. You will find it to the south of Australia, on the map. It appears like a small place by the side of Australia.

The natives of Van Diemen's Land are still fiercer and more barbarous than those of Australia. Hobart Town is the capital. The country produces corn, wool, oil, wood, bark for tanning, cattle, and sheep.

151° E long



**SYDNEY  
AND THE COUNTRY  
ADJACENT.**

5 10 15 20 25  
English Miles

151° E.



English criminals, for some years, were sent there, and to Sydney. These have been known to run away, and to live in the secluded parts of the country; coming out, every now and then, and committing robbery and murder. But this mode of bush-ranging, as it is called, is now almost broken up. I will tell you of Michael Howe.

Michael Howe was a bush-ranger; he was sent from England under sentence of transportation for seven years. He served one of the settlers, but soon fled into the woods to join the desperate characters there. He became their leader, and many were his robberies and deeds of violence.

Jealousy and mistrust springing up amongst these bad men, Michael Howe gave himself up to the government, on promise of his life being spared.

Soon after this, however, he again took to the woods, but his old companions shunned him as a traitor; so that he roamed about by himself, committing robberies and murders for more than a year.

A plan was at length laid for his apprehension, and it succeeded; but when he was taken, he made such a desperate resistance, that his head was battered to pieces with the butt-ends of the muskets of those who took him.

Such was the guilty career, and violent death, of Michael Howe; had he feared God and kept his commandments, a better account might have been given of him.



It is interesting to trace the progress of a colony. Peter Parley is a little curious in such matters. At first, the place is discovered by a navigator. Then a few people go there to establish themselves. As the place rises in importance, it is taken under the care of some government. It is explored and surveyed, to find out its resources. Farmers, and labourers, and mechanics are sent over, and government officers ; houses and public edifices are erected. It still goes on ; comforts increase ; books are printed ; a newspaper is published ; settlers arrive ; commerce spreads, and prosperity extends far and wide.

Many convicts have been lost in going to Australia. I should like to tell you of the *Amphitrite*, but have no time ; besides, the whole account is given by me in my "Tales of Shipwrecks."

---

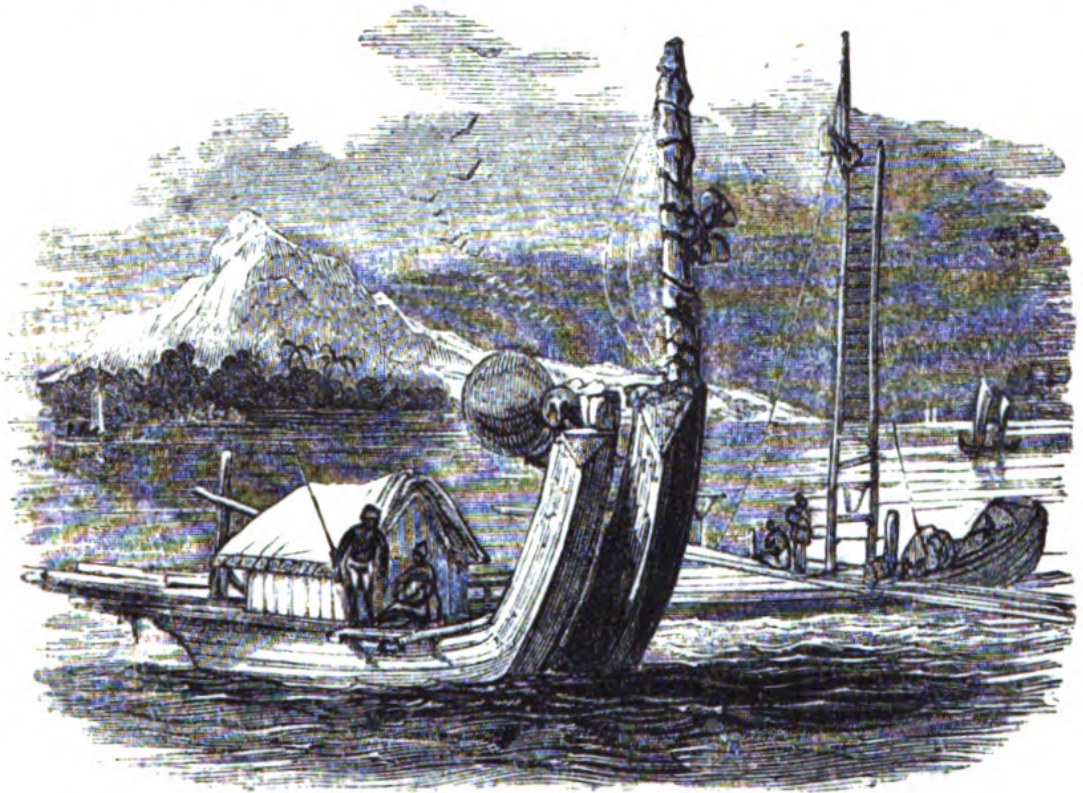
## CHAPTER V.

### PARLEY BRIEFLY SPEAKS OF POLYNESIA, AND CONCLUDES.

I SHOULD tell you about Polynesia. This name is given to the circuit including the numerous isles in the Pacific Ocean, lying east of the Philippines ; but it will

be better to give the account in my Tales of the Sea and Islands in the Pacific Ocean. Captain Cook was killed by one of the natives on the Isle of Owhyhee, who stabbed him in the back. This was a sad affair.

New Zealand lies in the Pacific, east of Van Diemen's Land. It is indeed two islands divided by a strait, four



PACIFIC ISLANDERS IN CANOES.

or five leagues broad. The southernmost island is the most mountainous and barren, but the land on the coast is woody. The northernmost island is more fertile: it has extensive forests, and every valley has a rivulet of good water. Yams, sweet potatoes, and cocoas grow here.



The people were well made and stout, and the women graceful. They mark their bodies with black stains, just as the people of Otaheite tattoo theirs. They had no quadrupeds but dogs and rats, till the Europeans brought over other animals.

Christian missionaries have done much good among them, in drawing them from their numerous idols, to worship the true God. The religion of the Gospel of Jesus Christ is now spreading among them. The Bay of Islands may be said to form a part of New Zealand.

I would willingly tell you of other things, but mine has already been a long story. When we meet again you shall know how I became a traveller, and what strange things I saw. I will tell you some Tales about Great Britain.

Though old and grey, I have not forgotten the time when I was a child, and I trust I never shall. You must think of the tales that I have told you, and turn them to good account. Be quiet, and tractable, and obedient while young, and then you will most likely be at peace with yourselves, if you live to be old. Fear God, and think kindly of all around you, is the parting advice of PETER PARLEY.

85, *Queen Street, Cheapside.*

CATALOGUE  
OF INSTRUCTIVE AND AMUSING BOOKS FOR  
CHILDREN AND YOUNG PEOPLE.

---

- ABBOTT'S HOARY HEAD AND THE VALLEYS BELOW,**  
royal 32mo, cloth, gilt edges, 2s. 6d.
- ARABIAN NIGHTS' ENTERTAINMENTS,** complete, 3 vols.  
32mo, cloth, gilt edges, 4s. 6d.
- AFFECTION'S GIFT AND POET'S OFFERING;** a Series of  
Original Poems, 32mo, cloth, gilt edges, 1s. 6d.
- BOOK (THE) OF GAMES AND AMUSEMENTS FOR GIRLS  
AND BOYS,** Illustrated with numerous Engravings, square, cloth,  
gilt edges, 1s. 6d.
- BOY'S OWN BOOK:** a complete Encyclopedia of all the Diver-  
sions—Athletic, Scientific, and Recreative—of Boyhood and Youth.  
With several Hundred Woodcuts. New Edition, greatly enlarged and  
improved. Square crown, cloth, 8s. 6d.
- BREAKFAST-TABLE SCIENCE:** written expressly for the  
Amusement and Instruction of Young People. By J. H. Wright,  
Author of "Ocean Work." 18mo. cloth, gilt leaves, 1s. 6d.
- CHARLOTTE ELIZABETH'S DANGERS AND DUTIES;** or,  
Disregard for Truth. 18mo. cloth, 1s. 6d.
- CHILD'S (THE) OWN BOOK.** Illustrated with nearly 300  
Engravings on Wood. The Seventh Edition, greatly improved. 16mo  
cloth, gilt edges, 7s. 6d.
- CHILD'S (THE) OWN STORY BOOK,** or Tales and Dialogues  
for the Nursery, by Mrs. Jerram. Illustrated with numerous Engrav-  
ings. Square, cloth, 3s. 6d.
- CHILD'S (MRS.) GIRL'S OWN BOOK OF AMUSEMENTS,  
STUDIES, AND EMPLOYMENTS FOR YOUNG LADIES,** with  
numerous Engravings. The Fifteenth Edition. Entirely re-edited.  
Square, cloth, gilt, 4s. 6d.

WILLIAM TEGG AND CO'S CATALOGUE

- CHRISTMAS COMES BUT ONCE A-YEAR; showing what Mr. Brown Did, Thought, and Intended to Do, during that Festive Season. Now first edited from the Original MSS. (Mess), with Notes and 47 Illustrations. Square, cloth, elegant, 5s.
- COBBIN'S (REV. INGRAM) SCHOOL HAND-BOOK TO THE HOLY BIBLE, with Illustrations. 18mo, cloth, 2s.
- CRABB'S DICTIONARY OF GENERAL KNOWLEDGE; an Explanation of Words and Things connected with all the Arts and Sciences, Illustrated with nearly 700 Wood Engravings. Fifth Edition, Enlarged, Crown 8vo, 9s.
- REAM (THE) OF SCIENTIFIC KNOWLEDGE; a Note-Book of General Information, so brief and pithy, yet clear and easy, that an hour's perusal may supply a Stock of useful Intelligence on almost every Subject. A New Edition, by the Rev. G. N. Wright. Illustrated by Diagrams, &c. 18mo, cloth, 3s.
- EARLY FRIENDSHIPS: A Tale, by Mrs. Esther Copley, Frontispiece, 18mo. cloth extra, gilt edges, 1s. 6d.
- EDGEWORTH'S (MARIA) POPULAR TALES. New Edition, 12mo, cloth, elegant, 5s.
- ELIZABETH; ou, Les Exiles de Siberie, suivi de la Prise de Jericho, par Made. Cottin, revu de Guilhabaud Leclerc. 32mo, cloth, 1s. 6d.
- ENGLISH (THE) GENTLEWOMAN; or, A Practical Manual for Young Ladies on their Entrance into Society. Foolscap 8vo, cloth, 4s.
- MATRON; a Practical Manual for Young Wives, by the author of "The English Gentlewoman," Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 4s.
- ENTERTAINMENT FOR THE NURSERY; a Collection of Favourite Tales, 155 Engravings. 18mo, cloth, 3s.
- FLORAL TELEGRAPH; or, Affection's Signals. By the late Captain Marryatt, R N., with 6 coloured Plates, 18mo., cloth, 5s.
- GAY'S FABLES, with upwards of 100 Engravings (Whittingham's beautiful Edition). 32mo, cloth, 2s. 6d.
- GUY'S JUVENILE LETTER-WRITER, being Model Letters For the Use of Schools and Families, intended to Assist Children and Youth in their first attempts at Epistolary Correspondence, by Joseph Guy, jun., of Magdalen-Hall, Oxford, Author of the "English School Grammar," &c., Frontispiece. 18mo, 1s.
- HOME AND ITS DOMESTIC SCENES, by Miss Sedgwick, Author of the "Love Token." 32mo, cloth, gilt, 1s. 6d.



OF INSTRUCTIVE AND AMUSING BOOKS.

HOWITT'S (MARY) JUVENILE BOOKS, entitled TALES FOR THE PEOPLE AND THEIR CHILDREN. Each work sold separately. 18mo, cloth, gilt, 1s. 6d. each.

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| 1. Strive and Thrive.     | 8. No Sense like Common Sense.                           |
| 2. Sowing and Reaping.    | 9. Love and Money.                                       |
| 3. Little Coin Much Care. | 10. Which is the Wiser?                                  |
| 4. Hope On, Hope Ever.    | 11. My Uncle, the Clockmaker.                            |
| 5. Who shall be Greatest? | 12. The Two Apprentices.                                 |
| 6. Work and Wages.        | 13. My Own Story; or, the Auto-<br>biography of a Child. |
| 7. Alice Franklin.        |  |

\*.\* The whole of the interesting series of books written by Mrs. Howitt, are marked by a graceful intelligence, and a simple tenderness, which at once charm the readers, and win their affections for the author.

INVESTIGATION; or Travels in the Boudoir, by Caroline à Halsted. Illustrated with 13 Engravings. Third Edition. Fcap. 8vo, cloth, gilt edges, 4s.

MORE'S (HANNAH) STORIES FOR PERSONS OF THE MIDDLE RANKS. Royal 32mo, cloth, gilt leaves, 2s. 6d.

————— TALES FOR THE COMMON PEOPLE, Royal 32mo, cloth, gilt leaves, 2s. 6d.

————— SACRED DRAMAS, SEARCH AFTER HAPPINESS, AND ESSAYS ON VARIOUS SUBJECTS. Royal 32mo, cloth, gilt leaves, 2s. 6d.

OCEAN WORK, ANCIENT AND MODERN; or, Evenings at Sea and Land. By J. H. Wright, Author of "Breakfast-Table Science." 18mo, cloth, gilt leaves, 1s. 6d.

PHILIP'S (UNCLE) CONVERSATIONS ABOUT THE WHALE FISHERY AND THE POLAR SEAS, numerous Cuts, square, cloth, 4s. 6d.

PETER PARLEY'S POPULAR WORKS.

Uniformly printed, with numerous Engravings, bound in crimson cloth, elegant, gilt leaves.

*Please to order Tegg's Edition.*

PETER PARLEY'S TALES ABOUT ANIMALS, with 500 Wood Engravings, 16mo, 7s. 6d.

PETER PARLEY'S TALES ABOUT CHRISTMAS, with numerous Wood Engravings, 7s. 6d.

PETER PARLEY'S TALES ABOUT ENGLAND, IRELAND, SCOTLAND, AND WALES, many Wood Engravings, 7s. 6d.

WILLIAM TEGG AND CO.'S CATALOGUE.

- PETER PARLEY'S TALES ABOUT EUROPE, ASIA, AFRICA  
AMERICA AND OCEANIA, about 135 Engravings, square, 5s.
- PETER PARLEY'S GRAMMAR OF GEOGRAPHY, with  
Maps and numerous engravings, square, 3s. 6d.
- PETER PARLEY'S TALES ABOUT GREECE, Ancient and  
Modern, embellished with 98 beautiful Engravings, square, 4s. 6d.
- PETER PARLEY'S UNIVERSAL HISTORY, on the Basis  
of Geography, for the use of Families, with Maps engraved on Steel,  
square, 4s. 6d.
- PETER PARLEY'S MYTHOLOGY OF GREECE AND  
ROME, Cuts, square, 4s. 6d.
- PETER PARLEY'S TALES ABOUT PLANTS, Edited by  
Mrs. Loudon, Engravings on Wood, 16mo, 7s. 6d.
- PETER PARLEY'S TALES ABOUT ROME AND MODERN  
ITALY, Illustrated by 100 Engravings on Wood, by Thompson, &c.,  
square, 4s. 6d.
- PETER PARLEY'S TALES OF THE SEA, Embellished with  
numerous Engravings, square, 4s. 6d.
- PETER PARLEY'S TALES ABOUT THE SUN, MOON,  
STARS AND COMETS, with 130 Wood Cuts, square, 4s. 6d.
- PETER PARLEY'S TALES ABOUT THE UNITED  
STATES, numerous Wood Cuts, square, 4s. 6d.
- PETER PARLEY'S LIVES OF WASHINGTON AND  
FRANKLIN, Embellished with Engravings, 4s. 6d.
- PETER PARLEY'S TALES ABOUT SHIPWRECKS AND  
DISASTERS AT SEA, with Engravings on Wood, 4s. 6d.
- \*\* 15 vols. in Mahogany Case, Glass Door, £4 16s. 6d.
- PETER PARLEY'S PEEP AT PARIS, describing all that is  
worth seeing and telling, &c., with numerous Illustrations, square,  
cloth, 3s. 6d.
- PETER PARLEY'S CHILD'S OWN ATLAS, with 12 original  
Maps, engraved on Steel and coloured, by A. G. Findlay, F.R.A.S.,  
square, cloth, 2s.
- PETER PARLEY'S WALKS IN THE COUNTRY, or Rural  
Pickings, being attractive Points in Country Life and Scenery, &c.,  
coloured Frontispiece, by the Editor of Peter Parley's Europe, &c.,  
royal 18mo, cloth, 3s. 6d.
- POOR RICH MAN, AND RICH POOR MAN, by Miss  
Sedgwick, Author of "The Love Token," &c. &c., 32mo, cloth, gilt, 2s.

AFRICA

2s. 6s.  
[Y, with

ient and  
s. 6d.  
e Basis  
on Steel

AND

ted by

DERBY  
n, &c.

1 with

OX.

ED

ED

D

is  
re.

nal  
S.

nal  
S.

S.

S.



